

慎小嶷

# 十天突破 雅思口语

剑14版

IELTS  
Speaking

音频下载



<http://speaking14.cmpedu.com>

Serial number:

Your PIN number:

慎小嶷◎编著

佳点

英音  
朗读

Cambridge  
British

Pat's Ten Days Step Guide to  
the Speaking Test

The speaking section is often the most daunting part of the IELTS Test. Ironically, many IELTS candidates perform poorly in the speaking section because they over-prepare for it. The "error-free" templates and picture-perfect "model answers" committed to memory make the entire preparation process a strategic failure — few people would try to learn the piano if they were only interested in playing the Liszt Sonata in B minor, right?

A Message from the Author

用真实海外英文口语剖析IELTS口语题库



机械工业出版社  
CHINA MACHINE PRESS



IELTS



SPEAKING

*All of you wish to use English freely during the IELTS Speaking Test, but making this wish a reality remains a puzzle for most of you out there.*

# 十天突破

## 雅思口语 剑14版

慎小嶷 / 编著

*Pat's Ten-Day Step-by-Step Guide  
to the Speaking Test*



机械工业出版社  
CHINA MACHINE PRESS



本书作者 Pat 老师有多年的英语国家生活经历, 在使用地道英语表达对 IELTS 口语题库进行透析的同时, 还对中国考生容易陷入的误区进行了非常中肯的提醒。词汇学习手册汇集了地道口语常用表达法的精华, 考生可以随身携带、随时学习。

本书的音频部分均由英籍专业人士朗读, 便于考生模仿和练习。

本书作者对于真实的英语国家生活和中国学生的口语瓶颈均有极为深刻的了解, 并著有畅销书《十天突破雅思写作》和《十天突破 IELTS 写作完整真题库与 6-9 分范文全解》。

### 图书在版编目 (CIP) 数据

慎小嶷十天突破雅思口语: 剑 14 版 / 慎小嶷等编著.  
—9 版. —北京: 机械工业出版社, 2019. 6  
ISBN 978-7-111-62840-8

I. ①慎… II. ①慎… III. ①IELTS-口语-自学参考资料 IV. ①H319.9

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字 (2019) 第 094744 号

机械工业出版社 (北京市百万庄大街 22 号 邮政编码 100037)

策划编辑: 孟玉琴 责任编辑: 于 雷

版式设计: 张文贵 责任校对: 徐春涛

责任印制: 孙 炜

保定市中华美凯印刷有限公司印刷

2019 年 6 月第 9 版 · 第 1 次印刷

184mm × 260mm · 28.375 印张 · 5 插页 · 693 千字

标准书号: ISBN 978-7-111-62840-8

定价: 78.00 元 (赠速查手册)

凡购本书, 如有缺页, 倒页, 脱页, 由本社发行部调换

电话服务

网络服务

服务咨询热线: (010) 88361066

机工官网: [www.cmpbook.com](http://www.cmpbook.com)

读者购书热线: (010) 68326294

机工官博: [weibo.com/cmp1952](http://weibo.com/cmp1952)

教育服务网: [www.cmpedu.com](http://www.cmpedu.com)

封底无防伪标均为盗版

金书网: [www.golden-book.com](http://www.golden-book.com)



# IELTS 口语的“脉”

## 考生是谁？

对 the IELTS Speaking Test 的持续跟踪让 Pat 深感在考场里真实出现的雅思口语话题极为广泛。事实上，它们几乎已经涵盖到了英美日常生活里的所有领域。

以 2019 年 5 月 24 日下午为例，就轮换出现了从 an important plant in your country 到 an ideal house 等跨度很大的 28 个卡片话题。如果再加上当天出现的第一、三部分考题经过排列组合后的可能性则会更远多于此。

与 Cambridge ESOL 出题者们明显“有备而来”相比，多数国内口语考生（希望您是一个例外）则仍处在采取顽固拖延战术或者根本就没有战术、慌不择路的“非正规军”状态。下面的官方统计数据残酷展现了这支“非正规军”在 IELTS Speaking Test 中是怎样被剑桥击溃的：

### Mean Band Score for the Most Frequent Countries or Regions of Origin

(Source: [www.ielts.org](http://www.ielts.org))

Place of Origin	Speaking	Place of Origin	Speaking
Germany	7.36	Spain	6.71
Canada	7.15	Russian Federation	6.67
Nigeria	7.11	France	6.56
Philippines	6.85	Italy	6.54
Romania	6.78	Mexico	6.54
Greece	6.76	Colombia	6.49
Brazil	6.72	Sri Lanka	6.49
Malaysia	6.71	Ukraine	6.49



续表

Place of Origin	Speaking	Place of Origin	Speaking
Egypt	6. 46	Thailand	5. 91
Iran, Islamic Republic of	6. 43	Iraq	5. 86
Pakistan	6. 43	Nepal	5. 81
Sudan	6. 41	Korea, Republic of	5. 79
Jordan	6. 35	Kuwait	5. 79
Indonesia	6. 27	Vietnam	5. 71
Bangladesh	6. 25	Saudi Arabia	5. 69
Hong Kong, China	6. 25	Oman	5. 62
Turkey	6. 21	Uzbekistan	5. 61
Taiwan, China	6. 08	Japan	5. 59
India	6. 01	China ( People's Republic of)	5. 39
Kazakhstan	5. 91	United Arab Emirates	5. 27

**结论** 在 IELTS 考生最多的 40 个国家或地区中，中国大陆考生的口语成绩平均值（mean band score）仅高于 United Arab Emirates（阿联酋），而低于其他全部亚、非、欧国家和地区，也包括不少文化被普遍认为比中国文化更加“内向”的国家。很显然，导致这种分数差距的根本原因并不是缺少肢体语言，也不是缺乏目光交流，而只能是实打实的语言能力问题。咱们也许真的应该反思一下：我们是不是一直都把错了 IELTS 口语的脉？

## 考官是谁？

我们生活在“阿尔法狗”（AlphaGo）已经击败了人类棋圣，无人驾驶汽车（self-driving cars）的综合表现正全面赶超人类驾驶汽车的时代，但 IELTS 口试却仍然坚持了“人—人对话”的形式。主办方 British Council 这样坚持的利和弊都很明显：考生在今后的海外留学生活里将要进行的也是“人—人对话”，所以 IELTS 口试可以更准确地反映出考生与当地入面对面的**实际交流能力**（face-to-face



communication skills)。但另一方面，“人—人对话”就意味着 examiner 的个人素质有可能会对考生的表现产生影响。

在中国的互联网上，雅思考官往往会被描述成黑洞般的暗物质。“印度大妈”、“光头杀手”、“灭绝师太”、“5 分油腻中年男”、“扔身份证的不耐烦 MM”、“像 Nikita 里面一个 killer 的冷面 SG”、“态度高冷、像霸道总裁的卷毛儿”、“热情、然并卵的笑面虎老爷爷”、“拒绝 eye contact 的杀马特”、“酷似 Breaking Bad 里 Mr. White 的眼镜蜀黍”……国内同学们关于口语考官的种种轶闻已经足以写成一本精彩的武侠小说 (a swordplay and chivalry novel)。但这些故事的盛传，恰恰证明了多数考官其实都是普通人。

事实上，不仅仅是雅思考试，到目前为止，世界上的任何一种口试（包括求职时做的 interview）都难以实现绝对的标准化。IELTS 确实难以排除 examiners 评分不负责任的可能性，但口语考官们总体来说还是敬业的。Pat 自己在中国从事雅思培训期间接触过多位现任和前任的 IELTS 口语 examiners，我可以非常肯定地说他们/她们无一例外都是“正常”人。而且，相对于英美社会的整体情况而言，客观地说这些考官的平均文化素质是不错的。如果连这些人您看了都觉着“不顺眼”，那么真等到您到国外长期学习、生活的时候恐怕就得“大跌眼镜”了。

而且，在评分能力方面，他们/她们全都体现出了下面的 5 个共同点：

**1** They are native English speakers.

这确保了考官们能够使用并且充分理解被 native speakers 普遍接受的英文，但同时这也意味着他们/她们也许无法理解“罕见”的英文。

**2** They at least have an undergraduate degree.

您肯定知道 degree 和 diploma 的区别，其实口语考官们的整体教育背景在英美社会中还是不算低的，但长成什么样儿那是人家的自由……

**3** They have Teaching English as a Foreign Language (TEFL) qualifications.



这个要求说明口语考官们是把从事语言相关工作当成自己 career path（职业发展方向）的重要部分，所以多数考官的心态其实并不像传说中的“口语杀手”打分那么“潇洒”。

**4** They need to get re-certified every two years.

您也许不知道考官资质每两年都是需要再次重新认证的，除非彻底不想干了，否则一般没必要让自己的打分多次被负责 remark 的 senior examiner 推翻。

**5** They have at least three years of English teaching experience.

这一条确保了多数考官对孩子们的“症结”还是能适当有所体谅的，但这同时也往往意味着考官对常见的“技巧”其实玩儿得比你还熟。

**结论** IELTS speaking 的本质是**和你的考官用英语进行一次尽可能充分的交流**。对口语考官的过度恐惧或者过度谄媚（butter up the examiner）都是没有必要的，您只需要像尊重其他人一样去尊重考官就够了，考官注意力的真正焦点其实是**你的语言**。

## 怎样使用本书收效最大

基于以上这些原因，在创作本书的全过程里，Pat 始终希望能够把在我身边的英语母语者们每天正使用着的真实口语和他们 / 她们的实际生活状态介绍给中国同学们。坦白地说，写这样一本书并不轻松，因为在分析每个 IELTS 话题时，我其实都是在不自量力地扮演着一个“文化传播者”的角色。

令 Pat 感到欣慰的，除了中国考生朋友们越洋寄来的 thank-you notes 之外，还有下面这个令人振奋的事实：



《剑 14》出版之前已经开始在中国大陆发行的《十天口语》上一版里 Pat 着力推荐的 a variety of, tend to, are more likely to, regularly, reliable, an enjoyable experience, attract, ecosystem, open-minded, exchange information, a good source of..., explore, greenhouse gas emissions, a balanced diet... 等实用表达均在《剑 14》的文本里密集地现身。That's the best compliment a test-prep book author can possibly get, right?

对于备考时间比较充裕的同学，Pat 希望您能够经常翻阅您手中的这本书。我可以肯定地说：本书里的每一句话都是自己用心写的，看这样的书不会浪费您宝贵的时间。即使只每次浏览三、五分钟，您也能获取一些**此时此刻正在英语国家被 native speakers 真实使用的词句**。出国之后您就会明白：真实的英文口语其实是简洁有效的，反而比用来“唬人”的英语更好学。跟 native speakers 卖弄“大词”只能像跟一个思想传统的人炫耀你多么熟悉 *Fifty Shades of Grey* 一样不靠谱。

对于考试已经迫在眉睫的同学来说（Pat 深知这类心理素质“过好”的同学虽然在逐渐减少，但却永远不会彻底消失），请您立刻停止“拖延战术”，登录 [blog.sina.com.cn/ieltsaguru](http://blog.sina.com.cn/ieltsaguru) 打印出本月口语预测题，然后按照下面的顺序选读本书：Day 1 (esp. Question 2) → Day 3 (通读) → Day 4 (每一类里用熟 1 ~ 2 个就够) → Day 5 (第一节) → Day 6 (至少把 3 个小测验练一练，并和音频对比) → Day 8 (不要背答案，但是应该熟悉高分答案的**语言风格**) → Day 9 (第一节，必须了解高分答案的**结构**) → 本书附赠的《IELTS 口语高频词汇和短语速查手册》里标星号的词汇和短语。

**结论** 充分了解每个月的出题动向是必要的，同时我们必须注意积累地道的英文表达，并对当代英美文化有适当的了解。只有这样，您才能实实在在地提高自己的英语交流能力。也只有这样，您才算是真正把住了 IELTS 口语的“脉”。



## ☆ 致谢

本书参与协助编写工作的人员有：李云香、张洪霞、朱卡亚、冉纪华、李玉亚、孔庆桐、李广荣、王福利、苗春瑞、兰印玲、朱瑾瑾、张会分、李佩香、袁毅、朱达斌、朱露西、孟萍珍、林淑芬、于辉、毛干斌、杨荣莲、孙国庆、智月仙、余团林、刘国强、孙国栋、杨兴普、田桂祥、朱文辉、李坤煌、李雄伟、林君凤、刘宝钗、尚纯义。

*My deepest appreciation goes to my parents and my sister Meg, without whom I wouldn't possibly have embarked upon this "cottage industry". Your loving and unwavering support means everything to me.*

*Special kudos goes to Ms Meng Yu-qin, the editor of this book, whose intelligence and resourcefulness make a real difference in the creation of this book.*

*Most of all, I wish to dedicate this book to the students who made up my classes in China. Their example has continually spurred me to keep working on this book. I hope it will be a nice reminder of our delightful time together.*

小嶷

2019 年初夏写于新泽西



## Pat 英文自序

### Preface

**T**he speaking section is often the most daunting part of the IELTS Test. Ironically, many IELTS candidates perform poorly in the speaking section because they over-prepare for it. The “error-free” templates and picture-perfect “model answers” committed to memory make the entire preparation process a strategic failure — few people would try to learn the piano if they were only interested in playing the Liszt Sonata in B minor, right?

To achieve a high score in the speaking section of the IELTS Test, you must understand what the examiner realistically wants. Personal preferences vary when it comes to words, structures and concepts, but all examiners value spontaneity. It is fairly easy for them to spot thoughtless spouting of prepared answers, because there are few or no natural pauses in answers given by rote. In addition, candidates tend to hesitate noticeably when the examiner asks for further elaboration on a prepared response. This dramatic hesitation seriously erodes the candidate's credibility in proving English proficiency, which often results in score penalties.

Unlike many other preparation materials available for the speaking section of the IELTS Test, this book is not designed to be memorized by rote; rather, it is intended to develop the readers' spontaneous English conversation skills. Accordingly, all chapters are structured around subjects that are not only IELTS-oriented, but also current and thought-provoking. The perspective offered on each subject challenges you to think beyond its common treatment. Each subject is also presented with a one-step-beyond component, serving as a springboard for addressing related topics at a more sophisticated level.



It is true that speaking a second language is partly a talent, but it is mostly a skill. It will, like any other skill, improve with practical guidance and continued practice. I encourage you to actively use the English and test-taking techniques you will learn from this book. That will not only help you retain what you learn but also make you a more confident and competent IELTS candidate.

***Patrick Shen***

*( a. k. a. Pat )*





# Contents

## 目 录

IELTS 口语的“脉”

Pat 英文自序



### 1 最真实的谎言

长期困扰中国口语考生的六个问题 / 2

Pat's Answers / 3



### 2 IELTS 口语的本质是什么?

Part 1 的体验是什么? / 15

Part 2 的体验是什么? / 16

Part 3 的体验是什么? / 18

Part 1 考什么? / 19

Part 2 的答案完全可以合理、合法地合并 / 28

Part 3 考什么? / 29



### 3 真实高分答案的用词风格

British Council 提供的高分实例解析 / 35



## 4 真正使用的连接词

Native Speakers 在口语交流当中真正使用的连接词 / 41

## 5 基础语法错误：勿以恶小而为之

必须努力纠正的 4 类基础语法错误 / 47

雅思口语考试里到底有没有很特殊的句子? / 50

## 6 练出 decent 的发音

适合国内同学的英文单词发音测验 / 55

国内考生发音的 8 种常见错误 / 56

## 7 Part 1: 短兵相接

口语 Part 1 话题库索引 / 62

Part 1 素材工具箱 / 63





## 8 Part 2: 清晰度 > 难度

IELTS 口试 Part 2 真题库索引 / 122

口语 Part 2 话题指南 / 123

Part 2 的一分钟思考时间里你应该做的事 / 125

作为 native speakers, 考官喜欢什么样的答案? / 125



## 9 Part 3: 怎样自然地把答案说长

Part 3 高分答案的结构 / 295

British Council 提供的高分答案实例分析 / 296

熟悉高分答案的结构 / 299



## 10 口语高分考生的共同点







Pat回北京最爱做的事就是下馆子，除了因为自己是真正的吃货（I'm a foodie.）之外，也因为在美国和加拿大的餐馆里实在没什么好吃的菜，生活久了很深刻的体会就是“享受肺、折磨胃”。而号称“美食荒原”的英国嘛……食品更是出了名儿的不“给力”，除了 fish ‘n’ chips。

有一次在北京的一家餐馆里，Pat突然发现英文菜单上很彪悍地写着“stir fly”（炒苍蝇）。我完全被老板的勇气震撼了，心想正常人胆子再大也不至于连苍蝇都敢吃，而且居然还是炒着吃。《舌尖上的中国》里绝对没介绍过这种怪异的做法（This bizarre “recipe” was absolutely not featured in *A Bite of China*.）。仔细研究之后，才发现原来是拼写错误，应该是 stir-fried（炒的）。

还有一次，Pat看到一家北京餐馆的菜单上对“干煸四季豆”这道菜的英文描述竟然是：“This website is temporarily closed. Please check back later.”这显然是因为餐馆老板在网上搜索这个菜的英文名称，但是网站却没有正常运行而得到的不是答案的答案，属于真正的 lost in translation。

Pat还见到过“四喜丸子”被叫做 four happy meatballs（四个快乐的肉球儿），“鸡肉”被翻译成 muscle，《一代宗师》里的“念念不忘”被译成 read, read and don't forget，而中国的经典古语“知之为知之，不知为不知，是知也”竟被翻译成：“Know is know. No know is no know. That's know.”

本书就献给这些可爱的 slip-ups。

No sweat.

The Ten-Day Series on IELTS







# Day



## 最真实的谎言

*True Lies*

Pat's Guide

To The IELTS Speaking Test

---

Using lies as alibis

Is the same game

Played in different ways

Made for gullible minds



## ❧ 长期困扰中国口语考生的六个问题 ❧

- 口语考试是不是必须回答“积极”的答案？口试是不是一定要回答“新颖”的答案？
- 口语考官打分的依据到底是什么？
- 口语考试要不要“套磁”？
- 考官问的问题压根儿就没有听懂怎么办？
- IELTS 口语考时事么？
- 怎样客观看待口试的 Predictions？



## Pat's Answers

1 口语考试是不是只能回答“积极”的答案？口试是不是一定要回答“新颖”的答案？ (*Do I have to sound positive or optimistic? Do I have to give the examiner completely original or creative answers?*)

国内考生甚至一些培训教师普遍相信下面的错误观点：

A 你不能给考官 “I don't like...” “Actually, I don't know much about...” “Well, I disagree...” 这类否定语气的答案。

B 你必须给出非常有创意 (original)、与众不同 (unique)、引人入胜 (engaging) 的答案才能拿高分。

我们来看看一个真实的口语考官是怎样理解这个问题的 (Clark: 29)：

One important point to emphasize (强调) here is that the marking system does **NOT** include references to the following points:

- \* Interesting content
- \* Funny answers
- \* Body language
- \* Appearance or dress

更加发人深思 (thought-provoking) 的是，这位考官同时还给出了自己的评分实例 (Ibid, 29)：“I interviewed a young lady who was arrogant (傲慢的), impolite, impatient and quite rude — but I awarded this lady a score of 8 **because her spoken English matched the descriptions in the marking system** (评分体系) **for band score 8.**”

像这样一个已经集所有讨厌于一身 (obnoxious, intolerable), 而且并没有为了讨好考官而展示“事业线” (cleavage) 的女士，因为英语说得并没有明显问题，还是从考官那里拿走了口语8分的高分。显然，在真实考官的眼里，IELTS 口试并不是“主要看气质” (It's not about whether the examiner finds the candidate attractive or not. )。



而 Pat 在北京时的同事，口语考官 Martin Renner 就更加直白地说：“It's not what you say. It's how you say it!”

两位货真价实的考官的肺腑之言完全符合 Pat 自己对学生口语成绩的长期跟踪调查：口语的分数，只看你的英语水平和答案是否具体、充实，和所谓的“别出心裁”或者是否“积极”完全没有关系。说得更直接一点：考官坐到口试的小房间里的任务不是检测智商，也不是做“心理分析”，主办方交给他 / 她的唯一任务是要确定考生的英语口语水平到底怎样。我们需要做的，只是努力去说正确、流利的英文，但是实在没必要给自己再强加更多的条条框框了（hard and fast rules）。

British Council 官方给出的这段话是对这个问题的解答最权威的结束语：“Examiners are **only** interested in **your language** and **your ability to communicate**. That is **all** they are assessing and judging.”

## 2 口语考官的评分依据到底是什么？(How should I interpret the rating system?)

同学们都知道口语有四项评分标准，但是那个标准很学术，一般考生难以望其项背。通过下面的这个表格，我们可以总结出一个更好理解的“草根版”口语评分标准。

### Pat 总结的“草根版”雅思口试评分标准

	5 分	6 分	7 分
<b>Fluency &amp; Coherence</b>  流利度和连贯度	句子中经常出现不必要的停顿，而且缺乏口语的衔接，还有些同学过度使用“er...”“ah...”这些 fillers，甚至中间出现长时间没话说“尴尬了”（very awkward）的情况。5 分得主的另一个极端则是超级流畅，说话完全没有轻重缓急，甚至已经听不出来喘气，	能说出完整的句子，但是每隔几句一定会有不连贯的地方。有可能出现较长时间令人尴尬的停顿，但是次数不多	语速比较自然，有合理的衔接，只在较少的地方由于思考答案出现了不必要的停顿或者内容跳跃



(续表)

	5 分	6 分	7 分
	看不到眨眼, 这种考生在说中文时都没有的灵异现象 (supernatural phenomenon) 只能被考官理解为你是 在背书		
<b>Grammar</b> 语法	不能准确区分单词是否要加 ed 或者 s, 甚至会出现 he /she 不分的情况	每隔几句都有少量的时态或者单复数错误	基础语法错误已经基本消除, 但仍然存在一些使用过程中的细节语法错误 (比如少数介词或连词使用不准确)
<b>Pronunciation</b> 发音	考官可以听懂你的内容, 但某些地方他 / 她需要仔细分辨才能听懂, 考官不会享受和你的对话, 只希望考试时间快点儿过去	考官能比较容易地听懂你的内容, 但仍然有些单词发音明显是错误的, 语调上不是很自然	发音自然, 但还是偶尔出现发音错误, 考官已经开始享受与你的交谈过程
<b>Vocabulary</b> 词汇量	使用小学或初一单词过多, 这是一种可能。 但对中国考生而言还有另一种更常见的可能, 就是字典英语痕迹明显, 使用大量在国外生活里从来不用的高级大词, Pat 称它为“词汇恐怖主义” (verbal terrorism)	用词已经比较准确, 在适当的时候可以用出来一些有难度的词汇, 但遗憾的是, 这些难词有大约 1/3 是被错误使用的	可以分辨在哪些地方应该用小词, 在哪些地方可以用更复杂的词汇, 偶尔存在用词不当, 但不影响整体意思的表达



下面我们用《剑 14》Test 2 里面的一道考题来说明低分与高分口语答案的区别：

### Is there anything you don't like about social media?



典型的 5 分答案：

Some people always chat. They don't have time for other things.

典型的 6 分答案：

Social media can make young people addicted. They spend a lot of time chatting with their friends but don't spend enough time with their parents.

典型的 7 分答案：

The main thing I don't like about social media is *the loss of privacy*. Even strangers can see what I've *shared with* my friends. Some social media companies also gather their users' *personal information* and sell it to other companies.

我们还可以通过《剑 14》Test 3 的这道考题来体会低档、中档与高档分数之间的差异：

### Do you think you are a good neighbour?



典型的 5 分答案：

I'm good. I'm quiet and nice.

典型的 6 分答案：

Yes. I'm always ready to help my neighbours. And I don't make noise or play loud music in my flat.

典型的 7 分答案：

Yes. I'm friendly to my neighbours and I *offer help* when they need it. I also *respect their privacy* and *avoid asking* them questions that are too personal.



再来看《剑 13》Test 3 里的例题：

When you go shopping, do you prefer to pay for things in cash or by card?



典型的 5 分答案：

I pay by card. Card is fast and easy.

典型的 6 分答案：

I prefer to pay by card because it saves time. Counting cash is slow and a bit boring.

典型的 7 分答案：

I prefer to pay by card because it's a *more convenient* way to pay. A card is also *easier to carry around* than cash. And sometimes I can *get reward points* for paying by card.

继续看《剑 13》里的一个 5 → 6 → 7 的三级跳 (hop, skip, jump)：

What are the ways that social media can be used for positive purposes?



典型的 5 分答案：

We can chat with friends and classmates.

典型的 6 分答案：

Chatting on social media is very relaxing. And we can find useful information on social media.

典型的 7 分答案：

We can *keep in touch with friends* on social media or *make new friends* who have the same *interests and hobbies* as we do. Governments and companies can also *share information with the public* on social media.



再来看《剑 12》Test 5 里不同分数段的答案：

### What could you do to have a healthier lifestyle?



典型的 5 分答案：

Many things, swim, ride my bike, not eat junk food.

典型的 6 分答案：

I could exercise every day, watch less TV and drink more water to make my lifestyle healthier.

典型的 7 分答案：

I could be more *active* and *go to the gym regularly*. I could also eat more vegetables, like carrots and tomatoes, so I could *have a balanced diet*.

还有《剑 12》里的这个实例：

### Did you enjoy doing art lessons when you were a child?



典型的 5 分答案：

Yes, I like art lessons and I draw very well.

典型的 6 分答案：

No, they were boring. The art teacher just let us draw things by ourselves.

典型的 7 分答案：

Yes, I did because our art teacher taught us to draw, paint and *make simple sculptures*. Those *activities* were *fun and interesting*. They also made me *more creative*.



我们还可以通过《剑 11》Test 1 里面的考题来看看口语 7 分到底是怎样炼成的：

### Do you watch cookery programmes on TV?



典型的 5 分答案：

Yes, I watch cookery programmes. They are interesting.

典型的 6 分答案：

Yes, I do. They teach me how to cook well. The food cooked on TV shows looks beautiful and the hosts are very funny.

典型的 7 分答案：

Yes, I do because the hosts have great *cooking skills*. I can really learn from them and *improve my own cooking*. They also have *a good sense of humour* and many of them teach people how to *cook healthy food*.

下面再用《剑 10》Test 2 里面的考题来说明一下 5 → 6 → 7 的飞跃 (leap)：

### Do you think all children should learn to play a musical instrument?



典型的 5 分答案：

They should because they can enjoy music when they play it.

典型的 6 分答案：

I think they should. Playing a musical instrument helps children relax. It's also an important skill all children should have.

典型的 7 分答案：

Yes, they should because playing a musical instrument can *reduce stress*. It can also help children *increase their concentration*. Playing a musical instrument, like the piano or a guitar, is also a good way for them to *express themselves*.





## 我们的结论

☆ 5 分是挣扎着说出来的（或者另一个极端是无比流利地“喷”出来的），和考官的交流要不然就是基本无效，要不然就特别机械生硬，更像“人机对话”

☆ 6 分是思考着说出来的，和考官的交流开始有效，但是并不充分而且也不是很流利

☆ 7 分是快速思考之后比较连贯地说出来的，但中间仍然会有正常呼吸和短暂思考所需要的自然停顿（natural pauses）。和考官的交流比较充分，而且已经具有一定的层次感，但是偶尔会出现不导致严重误解的语法、用词或者发音错误

## 3 口语考试要不要“套磁”？（*Am I supposed to butter up the examiner?*）

像这样“第二十二条军规”（*Catch 22*）似的问题其实永远会吵个没完。我们这样来看这个问题会更清楚：套磁并不会明显加分，但如果套不好却可能会导致扣分，因为考官被套一点也不影响他/她用自己的母语——英语向你提出问题，而集中精力套磁却会让你没有精力用自己的非母语——英语来好好回答考官的问题。再说，如果考官真的对你的套磁感兴趣了，撇开考试真跟你聊起来了，你能吃得消吗？（*Are you really up to it?*）

比如，近期有个考生听考官是美国口音，为了实现跟考官“零距离”，她说自己的“偶像”——罗玉凤——也住在美国。没想到考官正好看过 *People* 杂志对“凤姐”的深度报道，连续追问了一大堆相关问题，直到考试结束时还问凤姐是不是已经在美国找到她的 dream guy 了。我们当然应该尊重考官，但是像这种情况就纯属因为全力套磁而“被套”（get stuck）的闹剧了。

## 4 考官提出的问题如果我压根儿没听懂怎么办？（*What can I possibly do if I don't fully understand a question?*）

IELTS 口语里的 Part 1 和 Part 3 都是问答题。在这两个部分里，如果你遇到有的问题没听清，怎么办呢？

对于 Part 1，British Council 官方明确规定：You can ask the examiner to repeat a question if you did not hear it clearly.



也就是说：你并不需要跟考官玩儿“我猜我猜我猜猜猜”的游戏，而是可以直接说，“Sorry, could you please repeat that?” 这样说对 IELTS 口试这种 interview 是恰当的、而且考官也愿意接受的（但请注意避免过于频繁地要求考官重复）。

而且，对于用词更加正式的 Part 3, British Council 官方还明确规定：**You can ask for clarification in Part 3.**

主办方这条规定的意思是：如果在 Part 3 你听不懂一个问题里的某个部分，有权请考官替你澄清这个问题（clarify the question），可以跟他 / 她说，“Sorry, could you please explain what you mean by...（你没听懂的部分）？”考官就会按照官方规定换一种说法为你解释一下，你专注地听他 / 她的解释就好了。

## 5 **IELTS 口语考时事么？** (*Am I supposed to constantly update my knowledge about current events for the speaking test?*)

最近有不少考生发来邮件问 Pat 如果近期考试的话是否要准备一些关于中美贸易战 (the trade war between China and the United States)、马云发声力挺“996 工作制” (Jack Ma expressed strong support for the schedule of working from 9 am to 9 pm, six days a week)、《复联 4》在全球热映 (*Avengers: Endgame* was a smash hit around the world)、法国政府承诺重建巴黎圣母院 (promised to rebuild the Notre Dame Cathedral)、王源抽烟被拍 (was caught on camera smoking in a restaurant) 等新闻的相关信息。

考生的这种担心是正常的，毕竟 IELTS 口试属于面对面的交流，很容易让人联想到考官是否会“实时”出题。但令人遗憾（也许是令人庆幸）的是：**每一次 IELTS 口语的考题都是由剑桥统一提供的，IELTS 口语并不考查最新的时事知识。**

《剑 14》里的官方真题最真实地体现了雅思口试“只考社会趋势，但不考具体时事”的准确定位：

- \* How popular are electronic books in your country?
- \* Will electronic books completely replace printed books in the future?
- \* Do you think homes will look different in the future?
- \* Why has online shopping become so popular in many countries?



所以，IELTS 口试的首要任务是考查你的英文口语表达能力，关注时事新闻（follow current events in the news）本身是一种很好的习惯，可以长期保持，但您不必为了准备口试而特意去突击时事新闻“涨姿势”。

## 6 怎样正确看待口试的 Predictions?

对于备考时间很紧的考生们来说，不论英语水平高低，提前看看口语预测里的题目都是高效率的备战方法。而且，由于雅思口试是分阶段更换题库，而不是每次考试都换题库，因此口语预测的命中率还是挺高的。所以客观地说：准备口语预测不算是浪费生命。但有3点，Pat 要特别请您注意：(a) 对于那些过于简单、你肯定能回答出来的预测题，可以跳过去不必准备，有重点地备考是明智而不是偷懒；(b) 话题接近的考题完全可以合并。虽然你不是考官，但考官也不是你，考官就是一般人而不是 mind reader。当然，合并话题必须自然，过于牵强那不叫合并，而叫无怨无悔地跑题；(c) Pat 坚决鼓励您把自己原创的想法加到预测题的答案里去，即使有点幼稚也比彻底放弃就地卧倒要可贵。至于如何扩展思路，学完 Day 8 便知。

\* \* \*

*Okay, let's get the show on the road.*



# Day

# 2



## IELTS 口语的 3 个部分 各是一种怎样的体验？

*Sharing the Experience*

Pat's Guide

To The IELTS Speaking Test

---

When I look into your blue eyes,  
I start to quiver and shake  
Talk to me, talk to me,  
All I want is just a nice little conversation



☆ [www.ted.com](http://www.ted.com) ☆

对于从来没有近距离接触过外国人的那部分中国孩子来说,第一次进考场和考官面对面很有可能会有“坐电椅”的感觉,有些女同学走出考场时说的第一句话甚至就是“吓死本宝宝了”。这样的“苦孩子”可以经常看看 TED 网站上面的 interviews(点击页面右上角的放大镜,再填入 interview 即可)。这些访谈不仅会让你更了解地道英文的交谈风格,而且也可以让你熟悉“LW”们在近距离交谈时独特的面部表情,帮助你从战略上藐视敌人。

► *We take the test seriously, but we want to make it fun and interesting as well.*



## Part 1 的体验是什么？

关键词：chat

IELTS 口语第一部分用剑桥的官方定义来说，是“关于你的背景、爱好、兴趣和习惯的基础问题”。但这听起来也太虚伪了吧？用普通人的话来讲，Part 1（俗称“趴1”或者“趴忘”）的本质就是一个 **chat**，跟考官聊聊你自己的基本情况。所以，Part 1 的考题是口试的三个部分里最“欢乐”的一个部分，因为它最贴近考生自己的生活。

从答案长度来看，British Council 官方明确指出：Remember to keep your Part 1 answers **short and direct**（简短的，直接的）。In general, your answers in Part 1 should be **2 or 3 sentences**. 也就是说：Part 1 的答案并不需要“迂回曲折”，平均每道题回答 2~3 句话并做到流利、自然，就已经很好了。如果您有“滔滔不绝”地回答考官提问的热情，请把它留给 Part 3 的深入讨论。

下面都是《剑 14》给出的 Part 1 真题：

- ◆ How much travelling do you hope to do in the future? [Why? / Why not?]
- ◆ How much time do you spend on social media websites? [Why? / Why not?]
- ◆ Is there anything you don't like about social media? [Why? / Why not?]
- ◆ How do you think your life will change in the future? [Why? / Why not?]
- ◆ Do you think you are a good neighbour? [Why? / Why not?]



- ◆ How often do you see your neighbours? [Why?]
- ◆ Do you invite your neighbours to your home? [Why? / Why not?]

## Part 2 的体验是什么?

**关键词:** description

口语的 Part 2 (俗称“趴2”或“趴吐”), 剑桥的官方定义是 “In Part 2, the examiner gives you a **topic card**. Then you have **one minute** to prepare and make notes. Then you'll be required to talk about the topic for **one to two minutes**.”

**Pat 注:** 在全球很多考点, 考官们其实都已经不再是发一个卡片了, 而是发一张大纸, 纸印着一个小小的 topic 和几点提示。

Part 2 的本质是要求你做一个 **description** (描述)。

“描述”和“闲聊”至少有下面两点不同:

☆ 描述时会有适当的思考和停顿 (pause)。

有些考生在 Part 2 因为正好遇到可以调动自己准备过的答案 (a prepared answer), 就把答案无比流畅地背出来。这明显不符合正常人“描述”时的习惯。

☆ 描述要有一定的规划, 需要有秩序才能描述清楚。

与 Part 1 和 Part 3 不同, Part 2 需要在同一个话题的不同方面之间做数次转换, 所以对于答案的秩序感要求更高一些。不过既然是口语, 毕竟还是和写作的严谨度要求不同, 所以也不用太呆板 (rigid)。口语最好的效果永远是轻松自然的。



比如下面这道题是《剑 14》Test 2 的 Part 2:

Describe something you liked very much which you bought for your home.

You should say:

what you bought

when and where you bought it

why you chose this thing

and explain why you liked it so much.

下面这道题则是《剑 14》Test 3 的 Part 2:

Describe a difficult task that you succeeded in doing as part of your work or studies.

You should say:

what task you did

why this task was difficult

how you worked on this task

and explain how you felt when you completed the task.

如果您对这些 topics 感觉“无从下嘴”，没关系，我们会在 Day 8 对完整的卡片真题库进行深入的探寻。



## Part 3 的体验是什么？

**关键词: discussion**

剑桥在“官宣”里对于 Part 3 的定义是一个 discussion (讨论)。考官在 Part 3 (俗称“趴3”或者“趴睡”) 提出的问题都与 Part 2 的卡片话题相关。Part 1 里的多数题是关于“you / your life”的, 而 Part 3 里的多数题则是关于“people”, “society”或者“your country”甚至“the world / global issues”的。

既然 Part 3 的定位是 discussion, 那么就必然有下面三个特点:

☆ 它需要很强的层次感, 你不能只用一两句话就把考官“怼回去”。本书 Day 9 已经为您总结出了深入讨论 Part 3 所需的全部常用逻辑结构。

☆ 语言风格会比 Part 1 和 Part 2 更正式。无论用词还是结构都会更 formal。

☆ 好消息是: 毕竟 Part 3 还是考口语, 而不是考写作。所以, Part 3 的答案也不必像《人民的名义》里面的达康书记说话那么严肃, 而且 Part 3 考题的难度和雅思作文题的难度相比也还是有一定差距的, 详见 Day 9。

例如, 《剑 14》Test 1 的 Part 2 卡片话题是 a book that you enjoyed reading and made you think a lot, 相应的 Part 3 就出现了下列问题:

- ◆ What are the benefits of parents reading books to their children?
- ◆ What are the advantages of parents reading electronic books instead of reading printed books to their children?
- ◆ How popular are electronic books in your country?
- ◆ Do you think electronic books will completely replace printed books in the future?

像这样的问题已经显然和 IELTS 写作里常考的“electronic books”话题有相似之处了, 但难度比写作考题相比还是要低一些。



## Part 1 考什么?

在亚太考区最新出现的新题，Pat 会及时在自己的博客 [blog.sina.com.cn/ieltsguru](http://blog.sina.com.cn/ieltsguru) 的口语预测当中为您及时公布。

### Recent Part 1 Questions (Part 1 完整话题库请看 Day 7)

#### The Start of the Test

Please switch off / turn off (关闭) your mobile phone.

What's your full name? / Can you tell me your full name please?

Can I see your ID card please?

☞ ☆ What's your full name? / Can you tell me your full name please?

这是固定的问题，简单地回答 **My (full) name is...** 就好了。因为中文的姓名顺序和英文的姓名顺序正好相反，所以最好别太具体地说你的 first name / last name 是什么，除非你计划在一开始就弄晕考官（Pat 的很多在中国有过任教经历的英美朋友们都谈到他们在中国时 “had to be careful about saying ‘first name’ and ‘last name’ to avoid confusion”）。如果您非要坚持说清楚自己“姓字名谁”，那么说 **My family name is... and my given name is...** 也可以。

☞ ☆ Can I see your ID card please?

这个也是固定问题，回答 **Here you are.** 或者 **Here you go.** 都很好。



## Hometown / Your House / Your flat / Housework

### ☞ ☆ What would you change about your city?

这里的 would 表示只是你的希望，并不是必须要能实现的。

### ☞ ☆ What types of public transport can be found in your hometown?

很多中国同学爱说的 transportation 其实是美国的说法，英国考官会用 transport。

公车当然是 bus，轻轨叫 light railway 或者 light rail，轮渡叫作 ferry，地铁在英国叫 underground，在美国叫 subway（Pat 注意到有些同学把自己所在城市的地铁叫作 the Tube，其实在英国 the Tube 只能用来特指伦敦市内的地铁）。

### ☞ ☆ Do you take public transport? Why?

如果您想回答“是”，理由可以有 Public transport in my city is **convenient and reliable**.（方便可靠的），It's a **cheaper** way to get around.（是更省钱的出行方式），It's **more eco-friendly** than driving.（比开车更环保），或者就用现在英美年轻人当中很“潮”的一种说法：I want to **reduce my carbon footprint**.（减少我的“碳足迹”）。

**Pat's note:** British Council 官方明确指出：IELTS 口试的评分原则之一是“**A negative answer is just as good as a positive one.**”（只要英文正确，肯定的答案或者否定的答案都是考官愿意接受的）。如果您想回答“不是”，理由则可以有：Public transport in my city is never **on time**（从来都不准时）。It's **unreliable**.（不可靠的）或者 It's always **overcrowded**（过于拥挤的）。

## Your Studies / Your Work

### ☞ ☆ What did you do on your first day in this school / university?

国外学校入学的第一天经常被称为 Orientation Day，常见活动有 an orientation tour of the campus（其实也就是带着大家看看校园），a Welcome Meeting，a free lunch（但最近几年因为经济不行，很多学校已经赖掉了），在有些学校里还可以 meet the faculty and staff（和教职工见面）。



## Habits & Hobbies

☞ ☆ What do you usually do at weekends?

注意：英国考官说“在周末”时会说 at weekends，而不说 on weekends。

☞ ☆ Are you good at managing your time?

**Pat's answer:** Yes, I can manage my time well. I like to **make daily schedules** (做每天的日程安排) and **plan my activities ahead**. I also try to complete my tasks **on time**.

**Pat's note:**

(i) 如果想给否定的回答则可以说: No, I'm not good at managing my time. I like to **put things off** (推迟) until the last minute, so I often **find it difficult to** get things done on time.

(ii) **find it difficult to do sth.** 是英文口语里很常用的句型之一，意思是“感到做某事很困难”。例如，特斯拉 (Tesla) 公司的 CEO，“硅谷钢铁侠” Elon Musk 就说过，“I **find it difficult to** balance work and personal life.”

☞ ☆ Do you think it's important to be punctual?

英国人常说 **Punctuality is a virtue** (守时是一种美德)。您可以在本书附赠的《IELTS 口语高频词汇 & 短语速查手册》的 p. 235 看到守时的重要性。

## Sports / Outdoor Activities

☞ ☆ Do you like swimming?

**Pat's answer:** Yes, I do. Swimming is a good way to relax and **reduce stress**. It's also a **good form of exercise** and helps me **keep fit**.



**Pat's note:**

(i) 地道短语 **reduce stress** 的意思是“减轻压力”;

(ii) 地道英文里还常说 Swimming is a good way to **lose weight** (游泳是减肥良方). 如果您希望练出像孙杨、傅园慧一样健美的体型, 还可以说 Swimming is a great way to **build up muscles**.

🗨️ ☆ **Do you think it's important for children to play outdoor games?**

**Pat's answer:** Yes, outdoor games can help children develop an active lifestyle. Playing outside can also reduce **their** stress and improve **their** concentration. Children who play outdoor games also tend to sleep better at night.

**实用短语**

(i) improve **their** concentration 的意思是“增强他们的注意力”

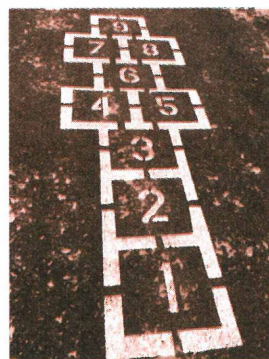
(ii) 谈户外游戏的时候这个地道短语也很常用: boost the immune system (提高身体的免疫机能)

🗨️ ☆ **What are your favourite games?**

**[ native English speakers 熟悉的游戏 ]**

- 户外游戏 (outdoor games):

**hide-and-seek** (捉迷藏), **tag** (基本就等于国内小伙伴们玩的“捉人”游戏), **piggy-in-the-middle** (站在两边的两个人互相向对方扔球, 站在他们中间的一个人努力去拦他们扔出的球, 如果谁扔的球被拦住了就要换到中间去作 piggy “小胖猪”), **hopscotch** (中文翻译成“跳房子”, 其实是跳在地上编有数字的方格)。

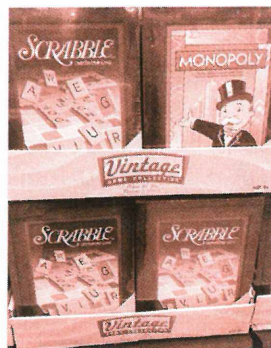


▲ hopscotch 游戏用的典型方格 — Pat 摄



- 室内游戏 (indoor games):

**board games** 在地道英语里是泛指各种“棋类游戏”，比如 **chess** (象棋)，**Monopoly** (大富翁) 和 **Scrabble** (英美最常见的一种拼字游戏，它对提高小朋友甚至成年人的拼写能力 spelling skills 很有好处)，以及 **card games** (牌类游戏)，**puzzles** (拼图游戏)，**math games** (近几年在英美特别流行的一种数学游戏叫作 **Sudoku**)，**video games** 等。



▲ 在英美的玩具店里，  
Scrabble 和 Monopoly  
经常是邻居 —Pat 摄

## The Media

### 📖 ☆ Why do we need advertisements?

最重要的原因当然是 They **give us information about** new products. 而且很多广告具有创意 (**creative**)，娱乐性也很强 (**entertaining**)，还可以在广告里面看到 **celebrities** (名人)；而对于商家 (businesses) 来说，advertisements 则是 important **marketing tools**。

### 📖 ☆ Do you prefer watching films at the cinema or at home?

如果喜欢去电影院，理由可以有 A cinema screen is **much larger** than a TV screen. 而且 The **sound quality** in the cinema is better. 座位也更舒服 The seats in the cinema are more comfortable. 可以更专注地看电影 (It's easier to **concentrate on** the film in the cinema.)，观赏体验更令人享受 (The viewing experience is more enjoyable.) 等等。

如果说喜欢在家看电影，则可以说 It's **more convenient** and **cheaper** to watch films at home. 或者自己并不喜欢坐在拥挤的地方 (I don't like sitting in a **crowded place**.)

## The Internet

### 📖 ☆ What are the differences between emails and letters?

在英美 letters 也经常被叫作 snail mail (蜗牛信)，因为实在太耗时间 (time-



consuming), 详情请看 Day 7 的 Topic 7。

## Reading & Writing

☞ ☆ Do you think handwriting is still an important skill for young people?

☞ **Pat's answer:** Yes, I think it's still important. We still often **take notes**, answer test questions or write birthday cards **by hand**. Good handwriting is easy to read, while poor handwriting is **confusing and annoying**.

### 实用短语

**confusing and annoying** 是“令人困惑而且让人心烦的”，“书写仍然是一种重要的沟通技能”是 Handwriting is still an important **communication skill**.

☞ ☆ Do you prefer to type things or to write things on paper?

☞ **Pat's answer:** 打字的好处除了更快 (faster), 还可以编辑 (edit) 和剪贴 (cut and paste things)。

☞ ☆ Do you think maths is an important subject at school?

☞ **Pat's answer:** Yes, it's very important because maths skills can help students better understand science, technology and **the world around them**. Maths can also help students **think in a more logical way** (更有逻辑地思考)。

## Clothing & Shopping

☞ ☆ Do you buy clothes online?

☞ **Pat's answer:** No, I don't because I can't **try on** clothes online. It's hard to know if they would really **fit me** or not. It's much easier to go to a local clothing shop, try the clothes on and make sure they fit me well.



**Pat's thought:** 如果确实喜欢在网上买衣服，用地道英文可说的也同样很多，比如：Buying clothes online helps me **save time**. 而且 Prices are lower online than in **physical shops** (实体店). 以及 Online clothing shops have **a wide variety of** (多种多样的) clothes to choose from. 等

☞ ☆ **What are the differences between street markets and supermarkets?**

**Pat's answer:** There're many **stalls** (售货摊儿) in street markets and we can usually **bargain** (讨价还价) there. Supermarkets have **tall shelves** (很高的货架) and they sell things **at fixed prices** (固定的价格).

**Pat's note:** 另一个明显区别是：street markets 卖的东西多数是当地生产或当地种植的 (**locally-made or locally-grown**)，而超市卖的东西一般都是被远距离运输的 (have been **transported over long distances**)



## Food

☞ ☆ **Do you like fruit and vegetables?**

**Pat's answer:** Yes, I do. They **taste good** and they're very **rich in** vitamin C and fiber, so eating fruit and vegetables every day can **improve my health**.

### 实用短语

(i) 短语 be rich in ... 是“富含……”的意思，**vitamin C and fiber** 是指“维生素 C 和纤维”，想说“有营养的”，请用 **nutritious** /nju:ˈtri:fəs/, 而如果要形容水果“多汁的”，请坚定地使用 **very juicy** 来表达

(ii) “均衡的饮食结构”英文叫作 **a balanced diet**

(iii) 英美人还普遍相信胡萝卜 (carrots) 和橙子 (oranges) 可以增强视力，英国家长们经常会在餐桌上提醒孩子，“Eat more carrots. They can **improve your eyesight**.”



## Neighbours

☞ ☆ Do you prefer to have elderly people or young people as your neighbours?

年轻邻居们的好处是 more **sociable** (更喜欢社交的), more **open-minded** (思想更开放的), 而且 I find it easier to **communicate with** young neighbours 等; 而老人做邻居的优点则可以有: They tend to be quiet but **helpful**.

☞ **Pat's note:** **tend to be** 在地道英文里表示“多半是”的常用短语:

[BBC 例句] Elderly people **tend to be** wiser and happier.

## Music

☞ ☆ Do you think it's important for children to learn to play a musical instrument?

小朋友学乐器的各种好处请看 Day 7 的 Topic 11。

## Weather

☞ ☆ Do you prefer sunny days or rainy days?

☞ **Pat's answer:** I prefer sunny days because sunshine makes me feel **happy and energetic**. I also like to do **outdoor sports** on sunny days, such as **jogging and cycling**.

### 实用短语


(i) 短语 **feel happy and energetic** 是“感觉心情愉快、很有活力”的意思

(ii) 如果说喜欢雨天当然也可以, 比如 I like rainy days because I like the sound of **raindrops** (雨点儿) falling on the ground. I also feel more **calm and relaxed** (感觉更加平静、放松的) on rainy days.




## Plants & Animals

☆ Do you think trees are important to our lives?

 **Pat's answer:** Yes, they're very important. Trees **produce oxygen** (制造氧气) and **absorb** (吸收) dirty air. They also make streets and parks **look more attractive** and **provide shade** (提供树荫) in summer.

 ☆ Why do many people keep pets?

 **Pat's answer:** That's because pets can help their owners **reduce stress and loneliness** (减少压力和孤独的感觉). It seems people who have pets are happier and **more active**. Keeping pets is also a good way for children to **learn about responsibility** because they need to **take care of** their pets.



### 实用短语

人们“遛狗”英文叫 **walk their dogs** (注意: 不是“走狗”), 把东西扔出去让小狗捡回来的游戏叫 **play fetch** with their dogs。

## Birthday

 ☆ What kinds of birthday gifts did you receive on your last birthday?

详情请看 Day 7 的 Topic 20。

此外, 您还可以在 **Day 7** 以及随本书附赠的《**IELTS 口语高频词汇 & 短语速查手册**》里看到更多的 Part 1 思路、词汇和短语。



## Part 2 的答案完全可以合理、合法地合并

仅仅从 2019 年 3 月 22 日至 2019 年 5 月 24 日短短两个月的时间内，在中国大陆累计出现的卡片题就超过了 70 个。现实地说，除非是有长期的备考时间，否则把 IELTS 口试卡片题库里面的每道题都准备得很熟练是不可能的 (That would be out of the question.)，所以才会有那么多孩子在准备 Part 2 的时候大呼“累觉不爱”。

恰当地“合并”卡片题答案的备考方法不仅是可行的，而且是必行的。请看：

Describe a teacher who has influenced you.	Describe a neighbor who helped you before.	Describe a person who can speak a foreign language well.
Describe someone who helped you before.	Describe an important person in your life.	Describe an old person who you admire.
Describe someone who you have studied or worked with.	Describe a family member.	Describe someone who gave you good advice.

很明显，通过准备 **an old English teacher**，我们不仅可以准备好左上角的一个题目，还可以很自然地覆盖这个表格里其他所有的 topics，甚至还可以把一部分内容借用到 **Describe a subject you liked at school. / Describe the first day of a course you attended at school. / Describe an ideal job.** 等看似“不搭界”的考题里。

又比如下面这个表格：

Describe a special meal you had recently.	Describe a difficult thing you can do well.	Describe a skill.	Describe an interesting thing you did in your spare time recently.
Describe a happy event in your childhood.	Describe a birthday party.	Describe a good cook.	Describe an exciting experience.

通过准备一个关于 **cooking** 的详细过程，会让我们对描述这些题目都有足够的信心。

下面请您自己感受一下合并 topics 的乐趣，练习下面的话题怎样快速搞定：



Describe an electronic device (not a computer).	Describe a gift you have received.	Describe an expensive thing you want to buy.	Describe something you lost.
Describe your favourite method of communication.	Describe something you saved money for a long time to buy.	Describe something you use every day.	?

一个 **mobile phone** 的答案就可以让这么多“闹心”的话题都迎刃而解了。

此外，您还可以在本书 Day 8 看到雅思 Part 2 真题库的详解。

## Part 3 考什么？

以下题目都是近期在亚太考区出现的 Part 3 真题，您还可以在 Day 9 看到对于 Part 3 的详解。

### ● What do you think is a healthy lifestyle?

(思路提示: **have a balanced diet** / eat plenty of **fruit and vegetables** / drink 8 glasses of water a day “一天喝 8 杯水”是英国国家医疗体系 NHS 提出的健康生活标准之一 / **exercise regularly** / early to bed and early to rise 这可不是“中式英语”，而是很地道的英文：早睡早起)

### ● What are the differences between modern buildings and traditional buildings?

(思路提示: traditional buildings are **more eco-friendly** 更有益于环保的 / traditional buildings look **more attractive** 更有吸引力的 / modern buildings are taller and stronger / modern buildings **lack character** 缺乏个性特色)

### ● What are the differences between fresh food and canned food?

(思路提示: fresh food is **rich in** fiber (纤维) and vitamins / fresh food **tastes better** / canned food **takes less time** to prepare and cook)



● How do TV programmes affect education?

(思路提示: some TV programmes are **interesting and informative** / they can provide young people with a wide variety of (多种多样的) **useful information** / on the other hand, many TV programmes contain **violent or sexual images** / young people tend to **copy what they see** on TV)

● What do you think of giving children gifts when they behave well?

(思路提示: That's like **a reward** for their good behaviour. / On the other hand, children may be **spoiled** if adults always do that / it would be better to **reward** children with words than with gifts)

● What's your idea of success?

(思路提示: It can be anything I really **try hard** to do. / anything that can give me **a sense of achievement** / even as ordinary as cooking a nice meal for my family or friends / some people are **very ambitious** and always try to **achieve success** in their studies or careers)

● Who can give good advice to us?

(思路提示: our parents / our teachers / our friends / people who have had **similar experiences** / people who **really care about us**)

● How can we solve the problem of global warming?

(思路提示: control the number of cars / **improve** public transport / encourage adults to **cycle to work** / encourage children to **walk to school**)

● What are the differences between individual sports and team sports?

(思路提示: We are **more focused** when we do individual sports such as jogging and swimming. / Individual sports can give us **a strong sense of achievement**. / Team sports can improve our **teamwork skills**. / Team sports are **more fun** because we **communicate with** and **work closely with** our teammates. / We **share the joy** of winning with our teammates.)



Part 3 的答案结构请参考 Day 9，需要注意的是：Part 3 的题目不管听起来多么怪异 (weird)，也没必要把答案想得太“深邃” (profound) 了。请牢记：雅思口语里的高分答案毕竟也还是口语 (spoken English)，而不是写作 (written English)。

用 British Council 的官方建议来说就是，“Remember this is a test of English **conversation** .”

***Think hard. Speak softly.***







# Day

# 3



## 真实高分答案的 用词风格

*IELTS Speaking Building Blocks*

Pat's Guide

To The IELTS Speaking Test

---

Music makes you feel a feeling,  
while words make you think about a thought.



★ *[www.topics-mag.com/back/issues.htm](http://www.topics-mag.com/back/issues.htm)* ★

这个网站上的网友来自世界各地，您不妨经常上去看一看。它的英语风格就很接近 IELTS 口语高分答案的风格：用词不是很难，但也不是很“痞”；有一定的连贯性，但绝不是背书。

► *We take the test seriously, but we want to make it fun and interesting as well.*



为

了准备 IELTS 口试，很多同学已经用出了“洪荒之力”（英国 BBC 把它译为 prehistoric powers）。

本该用来和考官进行**交流**的口语答案被“武装到了牙齿”，充斥着“语不惊人死不休”的难词和“让人回肠荡气”的长难句。备考热情本身值得鼓励，可问题在于：同学们的这些答案和 Pat 自己每天在国外生活里听到的真实对话怎么听都是两种语言。

主办方 British Council 的考官们也注意到了这个误区，而且特意向考生提出了“整改通知”：

Many candidates have been told to use profound (高深的) vocabulary — this is misleading (有误导性的) advice. Most candidates who follow this advice usually use these words in an inappropriate (不恰当的) way. Candidates should remember this is **a test of conversation**.

那么真实的 IELTS 口语高分答案到底是什么样呢？

请您仔细体会由 British Council 提供的这个真实官方高分答案样例：

**Which do you prefer, getting an email or a text message?**

*I prefer emails. I **work in front of** a computer all day so this is easier for me. I'm not good at **texting**. I know I'm a bit **old-fashioned**.*

这样的答案之所以会是 British Council 官方的高分答案，是因为这名考生显然是想针对考官提出的问题和考官进行**真正有效的交流**，而不是“自娱自乐”。这是典型的 British Council 官方答案的风格，而且也将是您出国之后每天听到身边 native speakers 谈话的真实风格。

我们再来看下面这个 British Council 提供的高分实例：

**Have you ever cooked a meal for your family?**

*I haven't actually. My mum **tends to** do all the **cooking** in our house. But I did **bake some biscuits** once. They were terrible. No one would eat them.*



整体用词很浅显，只用了少量略有难度（但也并不是很难）的单词和短语（phrases）作为“点缀”，考生的意图同样是努力回答考官提出的问题，形成**有效的交流**。

我们再来看这个《剑 14》Test 3 里面的高分实例：

**Do you think that successful people are always happy people?**

*I don't think they are always happy people because they have their problems too. For example, many successful people have **stressful lifestyles** and **suffer from anxiety**. It's also harder for them to **keep a good balance between** work **and** family because they have **busy careers** and spend more time at work than others.*

还有这个《剑 13》Test 3 里面的高分实例：

**Why is it good to discuss problems with other people?**

*It's good because other people can **give us advice about** how to solve the problems. Discussing problems with others can also help us **get understanding and support**. Some of them may even join us in solving the problems.*

没有刻意使用“霸气”的词汇，但考生明显是在认真地回答考官提出的问题，而不是想把连自己都没有把握的答案扔给考官之后就“闪”。

下面这个高分答案的用词同样平实，牢记口语的目的是“**交流**”，而不是“吓人”。

**Do you think bicycles are good for all ages?**

*I don't think so. Cycling is a good way to **keep fit** for most ages. But for people who are too young or too old to have **good balance skills**, cycling can be dangerous activity.*



再来看下面的答案：

**What kinds of radio programmes do you like best?**

*I don't really listen to the radio very often. But I tend to prefer **news shows** and **sports shows** because they are fun and **helpful**. They give me information about what is happening around the world and in **sports competitions**.*

这样的答案之所以成为 IELTS 口试中的高分答案，就因为它合理 (make sense)，而且它的目标是和考官进行实实在在的**交流** (effective communication)。

即使比较抽象的考题也并不是必须用所谓“高端、大气、上档次”的词汇才能拿到高分。

**Do you think it's possible to be friends with people who you've never met in person?**

*Yes, it's possible. I've heard about pen friends or "pen pals" who'd never met in person but could still **communicate well** with each other **by mail**. And these days, it's very easy to make new friends on **social media**.*

\* \* \*

关于准备口试词汇，British Council 给出的官方建议是：

***Learn vocabulary by topic instead of in random lists.***

您可以在本书 **Day 7**，**Day 8** 和本书附赠的《**IELTS 口语高频词汇 & 短语速查手册**》里找到针对各类常考话题 (commonly-tested topics) 的加分词汇和短语。同时必须提醒您的是：“好词”在 IELTS 口试里的意义是帮助你更加有效地回答考官提出的问题、与你的考官进行更加充分的交流，而不是用来“晒” (show off) 的奢侈品 (luxury products)。







# Day

# 4



## Native Speakers

## 真正使用的连接词

### *Common Linking Words*

Pat's Guide

To The IELTS Speaking Test

---

The influence is endless.

It links us with the rest of the world.



不知您是否熟悉 **podcast** 这种在国外已经相当流行的学习手段，比如在 google 上搜索一下 English as a second language (ESL) podcast，就会有上千个学习资源供你选择，而且都是标准的发音和地道的英文，真该试一下了。

► *We take the test seriously, but we want to make it fun and interesting as well.*



Pat 在北京的一个外教朋友经常向 Pat 这样“吐槽” (complained), “My students really like to overuse the word ‘moreover’. But we hardly ever use it in conversation (谈话的时候几乎从来不用)!”

事实上, moreover 虽然确实可以在正式的英语学术写作里使用, 但是在国外的日常生活当中却几乎没有任何一个 native speaker 会在说话的时候用 moreover, 因为很多人觉得说话时用这个词会听起来很 pompous (浮夸)。

连接词 (linking words) 对于提高口语答案的连贯性 (coherence) 有重要意义, 但如果把 native speakers 在口语里其实并不常用的连接词用到“也是醉了”, 反而会让本来挺好的答案听起来不自然 (unnatural)。

Native Speakers 在口语交流当中真正使用的连接词

类别	连接词	用法说明与例句
补充信息	and ★ ... also ... ★ ... too. ★ ... as well. ★ Besides, ...	<p>☆ <b>and</b> 是英美日常生活里 native speakers 表示并列或者补充信息时最常用、而且也听起来最自然的连接词, 没有之一, 当然在《剑 14》里也是高频词</p> <p>《剑 14》例句: The books are very good <b>and</b> even my seven-year-old niece loves reading them.</p> <p>☆ <b>also</b>, <b>too</b> 和 <b>as well</b> 也都很实用, <b>also</b> 在口语里一般出现在句子中间, 而 <b>too</b> 和 <b>as well</b> 在句子结尾出现比较多</p> <p>《剑 14》例句: Lim <b>also</b> wrote the text along with Barrie Kosky.</p> <p>☆ <b>Besides</b>, ... 在口语里经常出现在句子开头, 用来给出补充信息</p> <p>例: I don't really want to go. <b>Besides</b>, it's too late now.</p>



类别	连接词	用法说明与例句
因果	... because ★ ... so... ★ therefore	<p>☆ 如果在一句话里用了 <b>because</b>, 就不要再使用 <b>so</b>, 反之亦然, 它们在同一个句子里“不兼容”</p> <p>《剑 14》例句: That's on the far side, <b>so</b> it can't be seen from the hotel.</p> <p>☆ <b>therefore</b>, 可以在 Part 3 的深入讨论里适当使用 1~2 次, 如果过多则会让考官产生压迫感</p>
举例	like... ★ such as... ★ For example, ... ★ ... and stuff like that. ... and things like that.	<p>☆ 除了 <b>For example</b>, ... / <b>such as</b> 这两个实用的举例方式之外, “<b>like</b> + 名词”也是英美生活里的“举例神器”:</p> <p>《剑 14》例句: We can get energy from renewable sources, <b>such as</b> the sun and wind.</p> <p>例: I'm into fantasy novels <b>like</b> <i>Harry Potter</i> and <i>The Hobbit</i>. (这里改用 <b>such as</b> 也没问题)</p> <p>例: There can be a variety of ways to help others. <b>For example</b>, we can do voluntary work in our community. We can also give money to charities. Even just giving others advice when they need it would be a good way to help others.</p>
转折	But... ★ However, ...	<p>☆ 表示转折, 这两个说法都可以, 在口语里 <b>But</b> 要比 <b>However</b> 更常用</p>



类别	连接词	用法说明与例句
条件	If ... , ... ★ ... as long as ...	<p>☆ <b>if</b> 就是口语里表示如果最自然的词</p> <p>《剑 14》例句: The stage will be useful <b>if</b> you need entertainment.</p> <p>☆ <b>as long as</b> 是“只要……”的意思, 比如 Backstreet Boys 的歌词 “I don't care who you are, where you're from or what you did, <b>as long as</b> you love me.”</p> <p>《剑 14》例句: Extra service can be provided <b>as long as</b> we have enough space.</p>
对比	On the other hand, ... ★ while ★ ... By contrast...	<p>☆ <b>On the other hand, ...</b> (另一方面, ……)</p> <p>例: My job is quite stressful. <b>On the other hand</b>, it pays well.</p> <p>☆ <b>while</b> 在口试当中, 特别是在 Part 3 里使用 1 ~ 2 次完全可以, 而且效果也挺自然的, 只要别不停地 while... while... while... 就没关系</p> <p>《剑 14》例句: These containers remained, <b>while</b> the wooden ships have been buried.</p> <p>☆ <b>By contrast...</b> 它也很适合在 Part 3 的深入讨论部分里引出两种人或两种事物之间的对比:</p> <p>例: Men think of shopping as a task. <b>By contrast</b>, women think of shopping as a hobby.</p>
让步	Although..., ...	<p>☆ <b>Although..., ...</b> 是“尽管”的意思</p> <p>《剑 14》例句: <b>Although</b> I also studied it, I was not convinced of its value.</p>



类别	连接词	用法说明与例句
替代	rather than ★ instead of	<p>☆ <b>rather than</b> 和 <b>instead of</b> 都表示“而不是……”，中国考生们普遍很熟悉这两个地道短语，却很少能想到在口语里面去使用它们：</p> <p>《剑14》例句：An advantage of using the tide <b>rather than</b> waves is the tide is predictable.</p> <p>例：Developed countries should help developing countries improve their education system <b>instead of</b> just giving them money.</p>



对于备考时间已经彻底不够的“烤鸭”来说，不妨试试通过练习剑桥听力题来提高对于口语连贯性的感觉。多听剑4 ~ 剑14每套题里面的听力段子，并且把剑4 ~ 剑14后面的听力文本（**audioscripts**）也看上几遍，耳濡目染也能提高对英语连贯性的感觉。

这个《剑13》的“段子”充分展示了地道英文是怎样建立连贯性的：

Sarah Partan and her team have been looking at how squirrels communicate in an urban environment, **and** they've found that a routine part of their communication is carried out by waving their tails. You **also** see this in the country **but** it's much more common in cities, probably **because** it's effective in a noisy environment. One of the possible long-term effects of this is that we may see new species developing in cities. **On the other hand**, it's possible that not all the adaptations will be permanent.

这个《剑14》的听力段子里也用到了不少我们已经学到的地道英文连接词：

Most volunteers spend two or three hours doing this, **while** a few do much more. They can do all sorts of things. **For example**, **if** they're supporting a family, they may be able to give the family tips on cooking **and** even do some babysitting for the family.

剑4 ~ 剑14里的同类段子还有很多，这样的英文，其实远比一些艰深晦涩的口语答案更加接近当代英美 native speakers 的真实口语交流风格。



# Day

# 5



## 基础语法错误： 勿以恶小而为之

*Try to Avoid Basic  
Grammatical Mistakes*

Pat's Guide  
To The IELTS Speaking Test

---

We write a thousand pages  
They're torn and on the floor  
But we are not leaving  
because this place is part of us  
and all the scenes are just repeating themselves



☆ *www.debate.org/opinions* ☆

这个相当酷的辩论网站几乎覆盖了所有常考的口语讨论话题。在页面上选择 Education, News, Technology 等主题后,点击每个辩论话题,您就可以找到自己需要的各种支持 (YES) 或者反对 (NO) 的理由了。

► *We take the test seriously, but we want  
to make it fun and interesting as well.*



对

于 7 分口语考生的语法准确度，官方要求是：frequently produces error-free sentences, though some grammatical mistakes persist（能够说出较多不含语法错误的句子，但一些语法错误仍持续存在）。也就是说，7 分答案里还是允许出现语法错误的，只要不是过于频繁就好了。

但是 British Council 同时明确指出：

If you make **too many** basic grammatical mistakes（过多的基础语法错误），your speaking score **will be limited**.

主办方之所以这么介意“基础语法错误”，就是因为它们在考生的答案里实在太顽固了，简直就是“打不死的小强”。

## 必须努力纠正的 4 类基础语法错误

### || 无视-ed 的存在 ||

悍然忘记**动词过去时**的杀伤力非常强，特别是对于 Part 2 卡片话题的描述，因为如果题目要求描述你过去的事件或者经历，你一旦忘记就会连续说错一串儿动词的时态。

请在考前练习预测题的时候就常常提醒自己：“**用英语描述过去的事情就必须用动词的过去时**”。在考场实战中，如果看到 Part 2 的卡片话题是要求描述过去的事件或者经历，您还可以在 1 分钟思考时间开始时就把-ed 写在考官给你记 notes 的白纸上来提示自己，字母写得大一点也没关系。你不需要给 British Council 省纸，反正 2020 大洋已经垫进去了。

多数英语动词的过去时形式都是直接加 ed，还有少数不规则动词的过去时形式是特殊变化，请在考前花点时间熟悉下面这个表格：

### IELT 口试容易说错的 28 个不规则动词过去式

动词原形	正确的过去式
begin	began
break	broke
buy	bought



动词原形	正确的过去式
catch	caught
choose	chose
come	came
fall	fell
feel	felt
find	found
give	gave
go	went
keep	kept
lead	led
leave	left
lose	lost
make	made
meet	met
put	put
read /ri:d/	read /red/
say	said
see	saw
sell	sold
sit	sat
spend	spent
take	took
teach	taught
think	thought
win	won



Pat 指南



英语的时态原则是“动词的形式和动作发生的时间**严格对应**”。如果考官在 Part 1 和 Part 3 问你的问题或者考官在 Part 2 给你的卡片题不是关于过去，而是关于现在的常态，或者是关于对未来的展望，那么直接用**一般现在时**或者用 **will + 动词原形**就好了。

## || he / she 之不知 ||

有些孩子描述 an old man 的话题，一上来就是 she，但说了几个 she 突然又变成了 he... 考官只能相信这位可敬的 old man 是一个 transsexual person，这已经都不是卖萌了，这是真萌。

中文里的他和她写法不同，但读音相同。可英文里的 he 和 she 不只拼写不同，发音也有明显的差异，请在考前练习预测题时就提醒自己一定要分清你的答案里“男主”/“女主”的性别。

## || 滥用…… how to say... ||

当一个中国孩子想不出该怎么表达的时候经常会这么说，可惜这真心不是一个地道的英文插入语。下一次如果犹豫该怎么说，需要一点缓冲时间，请改用 like... 或者 you know... 这样 native speakers 也确实会使用的插入语，但也不要用得过于频繁，否则会影响你在流利度评分项上的得分。

## || 不能“蹭”过去的-s 问题 ||

在中国同学们的口试答案里，单复数永远是最常见的错误。有些中国孩子根本就不觉得一个字母 s 加不加也算个事儿，但是在英文口语里，名词加 s 和不加 s 时的读音会有明显的不同，你很难“蹭”过去。更重要的是：在英语里，单复数的不同往往会带来句子意思的实质性差异，是一个“原则问题”。

同时还要注意的是：不仅忘记给复数名词加 s 是错的，如果给不可数名词“画蛇添足”地加了 s 也同样是错的。



在 IELTS 口试里 **不能** 加 s 的 8 个常考名词information  
furnitureknowledge  
equipmentadvice  
scenerybehaviour  
jewellery

## 雅思口语考试里到底有没有很特殊的句子？

## Yes and No.

为什么这么说呢？因为口语的本质就是用来进行交流的工具，如果“处心积虑”地追求特殊，那说出来的就一定不是正常人说的语言了。但是另一方面，下面两种句子确实有点特殊，如果恰当使用，在 IELTS 口试里还是会有明显的拿分作用的。

## ① 定语从句

用 that, who, which 引导的定语从句其实是中国同学们很熟悉的一种句式，但是对于以有效的交流为高分标准的 IELTS 口语来说，定语从句已经是一种很好的特殊句式了。而且《剑 14》的 Speaking 部分和 Listening 部分里就出现了不少定语从句，您完全可以放心使用：

- ◇ I will talk about ocean energy **that** relies on the movement of the oceans.
- ◇ Volunteers are teenagers and adults **who** choose to spend some unpaid time helping other people.
- ◇ Sand might be stopped from flowing, **which** can lead to environmental problems.

## ② 虚拟语气

听起来很神奇，其实说白了就是用过去的时态表示现在或者将来的事情，表示比较客气的假设或者建议。虚拟语气是受过良好教育的 native speakers 在口语对话时很常用的一种特殊句式，而且也是《剑 14》的 Speaking 部分和 Listening 部分里的常客之一：



- ◇ That **might** cause the sea level to rise. (很客气地假设)
- ◇ We **could** have a timeline to show when they lived. (很客气地提出建议)



定语从句和虚拟语气虽好，但也请您注意不要使用过度，因为在短短的11 ~ 14分钟口试时间里如果用得太多，那它们也就不“特殊”了







# Day



## 练出 decent 的发音

*Pronunciation Counts.*

Pat's Guide

To The IELTS Speaking Test

---

If you can't pronounce it correctly,  
don't consider it part of your active vocabulary.



★ *www.howjsay.com* 与 *www.inogolo.com* ★

如果你遇到即使查过词典但还是拿不准发音的单词，请立刻登录左边的这个网站，它会带你朗读所有的英语常用词。而右边的这个网站则专门提供对人名、地名等专有名词的朗读。

► *We take the test seriously, but we want to make it fun and interesting as well.*



Native 的发音需要长期积累，attractive 的发音需要不断磨练，但 decent 的发音是有可能在短时间内就练成的。

多短呢？也许，一天……

## 三大纪律

### ☆ 少看理论 ☆

关于英语发音的书面理论不管听起来多么玄妙，它们其实只会让你的中文 reading 能力越来越强。靠研究书面理论去提高英语发音要比让老外区分张馨予、张予曦、张雨绮的名字更有挑战。

### ☆ 集中精力 ☆

只要开始练习，你就必须把 TV set, PC, laptop, tablet, smartphone 等干扰源全部关掉，完全投入到战斗中（Throw yourself into it.），唯一允许留在你身边的电子产品是一个录音设备（a recording device）。

### ☆ 听自己说 ☆

身边放一个录音笔，这样进步更快。实在不好意思就把你身边的人赶走，并且规定一个小时之后才能回来。

## 适合国内同学的英文单词发音测验

### A Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

请您先做三个小测验。这些词都是 Pat 总结的中国考生最常见的发音错误，看看现在你的发音属于哪种水平。测试的时候，请和音频里的录音及时对比。

### ☆ TEST 1 — EASY

第一个测试很简单，是看你能不能达到中国学生英语发音的平均水平，如果错了 5 个或以上，那您的英语现在就处在中国人能听懂你的意思，但是外国人基本听不明白你在说什么的状态。



- ① beach
- ② because
- ③ yesterday
- ④ famous
- ⑤ invite
- ⑥ library
- ⑦ night — light
- ⑧ slow — snow
- ⑨ thick — sick
- ⑩ said — sad

### ☆ TEST 2 — HARDER

第二个测试难度大一些，如果这些词你的发音全都正确，你的发音就处在 native English speakers 能比较轻松地听懂的状态。

- ① newspaper
- ② industry
- ③ quite — quiet
- ④ temperature
- ⑤ sandwich
- ⑥ thought
- ⑦ clothes
- ⑧ kind
- ⑨ comfortable
- ⑩ loose — lose

### ☆ TEST 3 — HARDEST

这个测试最难，是看你的英语发音的“魅力指数”。如果这 10 个词您都能正确地发音，不用我说，肯定已经有老外夸过你发音好了。

- ① atmosphere
- ② celebrity
- ③ thoughtful
- ④ nutritious
- ⑤ photography
- ⑥ economic
- ⑦ gorgeous
- ⑧ unique
- ⑨ resources
- ⑩ sunbathing

## 发音的“八项注意”

听来听去，国内的考生发音其实只有 8 种常见错误。如果 8 种错误都能改掉，发音虽然还不完美，但是已经完全可以让 native speakers 轻松地听懂你说的英语了。

### 1. 应该是长音还是短音？

Pat 经常听到学生会把 meal 说成 mill，把 sheet 读成 shit，甚至还有人把 beach 说成 bitch，真不知是故意还是误伤。请一定仔细跟音频朗读下面的单词：

heat hit peak pick team Tim



## 2. 力度够不够？

北京话讲究的是轻快，所以很多北京考生在说英语的时候发音力度不够，把 because 说成“笔铐子”，sorry 说成“骚瑞”，apple 说成“挨剖”，都是因为发音的力度不够。请来自北京方向的读者仔细听 native speakers 是怎样朗读下面的单词：

net    Patrick (有无数北京孩子把 Pat 英文名字里的 Pa 轻松地发成了“拍”的音)  
family    kind    easily    because    sorry    apply

## 3. 到底有没有儿化音？

北方话，特别是北京话，儿化音超多，像“冰棍儿”如果说成“冰棍”，就会让人不寒而栗。但是 Pat 要特别提醒来自中国北方的同学注意：对于不含 r 这个字母的单词，即使在美国，也是不会有儿化音的。

请来自北方的读者认真跟音频朗读下面的单词：

famous    panda    grandpa    difficult

## 4. th 到底怎么说？

中文里面没有 th 这个音，所以要发好这个音还真的是要好好练一练。关键是舌尖儿要伸到上牙的外面一点点（不要太多，否则会很难看），而且轻轻地碰到上牙，然后轻轻吹一口气，效果就出来了。如果是 these 里面的 th，则需要把舌尖伸出到上牙的外面一点点，轻轻地在上面摩擦一下，就好了。请您放下面子，虚心跟音频朗读下面的单词：

thought    threat    throw    although    that    those

## 5. 如何区分 l 和 n？

l 和 n 这两个音在中国南方的一些地区经常有同学分不清。另外 Pat 还发现一些说粤语的同学，习惯把 fat 和 report 里面的 t 省掉，也请务必注意改正。请南方的读者仔细跟音频模仿下面单词的发音：

night    light    slow    snow    money (有些南方同学会把这个词说得像英文里的女孩名字 Molly，如果您有这个问题那么也请一定跟着录音积极模仿)



## 6. 重音应该在哪儿?

对于雅思考生来说,把重音的位置发正确是比较高的要求了。但重音的位置发错,小则听起来很别扭,大则会导致考官难以理解你的意思。请您仔细跟音频模仿下列单词的发音,并特别注意正确的重音位置:

comfortable    newspaper    atmosphere    celebrity    photography  
yesterday    temperature

## 7. v 和 w 的区别

准确区分这两个音的关键是要牢记:发 v 的音时上牙会碰到下嘴唇,但是发 w 的音时上牙不碰下嘴唇。请您仔细跟音频模仿下列单词的发音:

invite    wife    swim    win    visit    violin

## 8. 是否会适当地连读?

弱化和连读是区分高手和菜鸟的重要依据,所以我们把这两项放在一起练习。请仔细跟音频朗读,认真模仿下面的发音。

part-time

but now

I'll

He'll

what's

Where is she?

give me an answer

three hundred years

it used to be

You should take care of them.

the gap between the urban area and the rural area





对于备考时间紧又对自己的发音没有信心的同学，如果您对某个词甚至句子的发音不确定，也许会选择查字典。其实可以试试 [www. naturalreaders. com](http://www.naturalreaders.com) 点击页面右上角的齿轮标识，可以看到供选择的的不同国家口音，而且还可以根据男名或者女名来选择性别。再点对话框右上方的 × 叉号，就可以在对话框里输入你自己想说的英文，然后点击箭头标识 play 就好了。

对于多数中国同学来说，通向完美、令人愉快的英语发音之旅在出国之后还要继续走下去，这应该也正是下决心出国留学的动力之一。今天我们先练习到这里，您现在可以打开手机刷一会儿朋友圈了😊







# Day



## Part 1: 短兵相接

*Giving Short and  
Direct Answers*

Pat's Guide  
To The IELTS Speaking Test

---

For every complex problem,  
there is an answer that is simple and clear.





## 口语 Part 1 话题库索引

Topic 1: Studies	① 学习 (含学习英语)	P63
Topic 2: Work	② 工作	P66
Topic 3: Hometown	③ 家乡 (含交通和污染)	P68
Topic 4: Films & TV	④ 电影和电视	P72
Topic 5: Advertising	⑤ 广告	P77
Topic 6: Reading	⑥ 读书、报纸和杂志	P78
Topic 7: Computers & The Internet	⑦ 计算机和互联网	P81
Topic 8: Mobile Phones	⑧ 手机	P82
Topic 9: Clothing, Jewellery & Shopping	⑨ 服装、首饰和购物	P84
Topic 10: Weather & Seasons	⑩ 天气与季节	P86
Topic 11: The Arts	⑪ 音乐、绘画与摄影	P88
Topic 12: People	⑫ 家人、朋友、邻居、团队成员	P92
Topic 13: Collection	⑬ 收藏	P96
Topic 14: Buildings	⑭ 住所、博物馆、图书馆、老建筑	P97
Topic 15: Sports & Outdoor Activities	⑮ 运动和户外活动	P100
Topic 16: Travel	⑯ 旅行	P103
Topic 17: Food & Cooking	⑰ 饮食和做饭	P105
Topic 18: Colours & Numbers	⑱ 颜色和数字	P108
Topic 19: Parks, Plants, Animals & Birds	⑲ 公园、植物、动物、鸟类	P109
Topic 20: Celebration & Rest	⑳ 节日、聚会、礼物、跳舞和睡眠	P114



## Part 1 素材工具箱

作为 IELTS 口试的开场白, Part 1 的话题都是生活里常见的 (您可以在 Pat 的博客 [blog.sina.com.cn / ieltsguru](http://blog.sina.com.cn/ieltsguru) 上看到最新的口语预测题)。

**British Council 对 Part 1 答案长度的要求** Remember to keep your Part 1 answers short and direct (简短的、直接的)。In general, your answers in Part 1 should be **2 or 3 sentences**. Your examiner may **interrupt** (打断) **you** if you give a very long answer in Part 1. 也就是说: 理想的 Part 1 答案长度是 2 ~ 3 句话, 如果非要跟考官“长篇大论”, 考官有可能会选择打断你的回答, 请把深入交谈的能量留给你的 Part 3。

**British Council 对 Part 1 所持态度的要求** A negative answer is **just as good as** a positive one. 也就是说: 只要英文正确, 一个肯定的答案或者一个否定的答案都是你的考官乐于接受的。Pat 对每一个常考 topic 都同时提供了正、反两方面的 ideas 和词汇, 您可以根据自己的实际需要来选择态度 (请参考 Day 2 里的答案实例)。您还可以在本书附赠的《高频词汇 & 短语速查手册》里看到更多的 Part 1 加分词汇和短语。

Part 1 的话题都是日常生活话题, 而且每道题只要求回答 2 ~ 3 句话, 说多了考官还可能会善意地打断你, 所以客观地说准备起来还是比较容易的。但注意练习预测题的时候应该给自己录音, 同时也别忘了“揪出”自己的语法错误 (参考 Day 5)。



### Studies (including learning English)

#### 学 习 (含学习英语)

★ I'm sure all my hard work will **pay off** (会有回报)。

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
My university <b>has a good reputation</b> . ◆ a good reputation 是“良好的声誉”	It's not a <b>well-known</b> university (它的知名度并不高)。
It has an <b>attractive</b> campus. ◆ attractive 是“有吸引力的”	The <b>campus</b> (校园) is too small and crowded (拥挤的)。
★ Most of my professors are <b>friendly and helpful</b> . 近义 kind and helpful	Many students are not really <b>motivated</b> to learn. ◆ motivated 是指“很有动力的”



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ They encourage us to <b>think independently</b> (独立地思考).</p>	<p>★ We're not encouraged to <b>share ideas</b> .</p> <p>◆ <b>share ideas</b> 是“分享想法”</p>
<p>★ We can choose from <b>a wide variety of</b> (多种多样的) courses.</p>	<p>Some of the courses are too <b>hard</b> for me.</p>
<p>★ The university provides <b>a friendly learning environment</b> (友好的学习氛围).</p>	<p>There're too many <b>classroom rules</b> .</p> <p>⊕ “课堂规定”就叫 <b>classroom rules</b></p>
<p>★ There are a variety of <b>extracurricular activities</b> (课外活动) we can enjoy, like the debate club, the chess club, the university newspaper, the <b>choir</b> (合唱团) and even a rock band.</p> <p>⊕ “学校的社团”在地道英文里就叫某某 <b>club</b> , 这里并非指俱乐部</p>	<p>But extracurricular activities can be <b>time-consuming</b> (很耗时间的).</p> <p>① <b>time-consuming</b> 是“很耗时间的”意思, 它在地道英文里的反义词有两个: 一个是 <b>efficient</b> (高效率的), 另一个是 <b>rewarding</b> (很有回报的)</p> <p>② 如果说“纯属浪费时间”, 那么英文就是 “It's just <b>a waste of time</b> .”</p>
<p>I <b>do voluntary work</b> at the university library.</p> <p>⊕ 其实做 <b>voluntary work</b> 是英美考官们相当希望听到的一种经历, 而且他们自己从小到大也都做过很多次 <b>volunteers</b>(志愿者)</p>	<p>I have <b>a heavy class load</b> this term. 我这学期的课业负担很重。</p> <p>⊕ 在大学里当您听到别人说 <b>workload</b> 的时候其实也是指课业负担</p>
<p>The <b>canteen / cafeteria</b> serves <b>good food</b> at <b>reasonable</b> prices.</p> <p>⊕ 大学和中学的“食堂”叫 <b>cafeteria</b> 或者 <b>canteen</b> 都可以, <b>reasonable prices</b> 就是“合理的价格”</p>	<p>The canteen / cafeteria food is <b>gross</b> (差得出奇的).</p> <p>⊕ 雅思口试时不能说 <b>yucky</b> ✕</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
We're <b>well prepared for employment</b> (为就业做好充分的准备).	We're not well prepared for <b>the job market</b> (就业市场). 在地道英文里 <b>the job market</b> 是泛指整个就业市场, 而中文所说的“人才交流会”在英文里是叫作 a job fair

## Studies 学习

## Learning English 学英语

It's important to be **bilingual** (双语的) today.

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Understanding English <b>helps</b> me <b>better understand</b> English-speaking cultures. “双语的” <b>bilingual</b> 有很多考生认识, 但口试时却往往会忘记你自己其实就是 <b>bilingual</b>	You <b>are considered</b> “ <b>left behind</b> ” if you can't speak English. 听说技能 <b>listening and speaking skills</b> , 读写技能 <b>reading and writing skills</b> , “发展”某种技能最地道的动词就是 <b>develop</b>
★ Learning a foreign language helps us become <b>more open-minded</b> (思维更开放的).	★ Learning a foreign language <b>takes time and energy</b> . ◆ <b>takes time and energy</b> 是“需要投入时间和精力”
★ People who are bilingual tend to <b>have more job opportunities</b> .	Learning a foreign language can be very <b>challenging</b> . ◆ <b>challenging</b> “有挑战的”
★ <b>Singing along to</b> English songs is a good way to improve my English <b>pronunciation</b> (发音). ◆ <b>sing along to</b> ..就是“跟着一起唱”	There're plenty of <b>test-taking techniques</b> (应试技巧). But as a matter of fact, there're no <b>shortcuts</b> (捷径) to learning a foreign language.



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Reading English novels and magazines is a good way to <b>expand my vocabulary</b> (扩展词汇量).	English <b>grammar</b> (语法) is very different from Chinese grammar.
I can understand English movies without reading <b>the Chinese subtitles</b> .	中文字幕叫作 <b>Chinese subtitles</b> , 用中文配音的电影叫 <b>films dubbed in Chinese</b>

Pat 指南



- ☆ 良好的英语技能无疑会在就业市场中给我们带来明显的竞争优势, 那么 “竞争优势” 怎样用地道英文表达呢? native speakers 不说 a competition advantage X, 而会说 a **competitive advantage** ✓ 或者 a **competitive edge** ✓

Good English skills can **give** us a **competitive advantage** / a **competitive edge** in the job market.



Work

工作

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ I have a <b>fun and rewarding</b> (很有回报的) job. ◆ <b>rewarding</b> 既可以指物质上很有回报的, 也可以指心理上很有回报的	My job is <b>dull and boring</b> (乏味的, 枯燥的).
The <b>salary</b> (工资) is good. ⊗ 同义表达是 <b>The pay is good</b> . 请注意这句话里的 <b>pay</b> 不要说成 payment	I'm really tired of <b>working for peanuts</b> (挣钱少). ◆ native speakers 经常把挣钱少叫作 “为了花生而工作”



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>My job provides me with a variety of <b>benefits</b> , like <b>health insurance</b> (医疗保险), <b>paid holidays</b> (带薪休假) and a <b>pension</b> (养老金) <b>plan</b> .</p> <p>◆ native speakers 常用 <b>benefits</b> 来指“工作福利”</p>	<p>We don't <b>have equal opportunities</b> for promotion (提职).</p>
<p>★ My boss <b>treats everyone fairly</b> .</p>	<p>My boss is a <b>slave driver</b> (真不把员工当人).</p>
<p>★ My <b>colleagues</b> (同事) are <b>friendly and helpful</b> .</p> <p>◆ native speakers 也经常把同事称为 <b>co-workers</b></p>	<p>Some of my co-workers are <b>rude and selfish</b> (自私的).</p>
<p>I have <b>a nine-to-five job</b> .</p> <p>📌 一份“朝九晚五”的工作在地道英文里就叫 <b>a nine-to-five job</b></p>	<p>★ I often have to <b>work overtime</b> (加班).</p>
<p>★ My job provides the opportunity to <b>develop new skills</b> (发展新的技能).</p>	<p>It's <b>a dead-end job</b> (没前途的工作)。</p>
<p>Employees <b>are paid time-and-a-half</b> (150% ) if they work at weekends.</p> <p>📌 在英美, 员工在周末或者公共假日 (public holidays) 上班一般能获得 150% 或者 double time (200%) 的酬劳</p>	<p>I've never been paid for the <b>extra work</b> (额外的工作).</p>

Pat 指南



My job gives me **a sense of satisfaction** . (我的工作给我一种满足感) 是英美人说很喜欢自己的工作时特别常说的一句话。



如果对自己的工作并不满意呢？不管是工作的原因还是自己的原因，native speakers常说的一句话都是：I **don't feel motivated** at work（我上班的时候完全没动力），然后就是一脸无辜的表情……

压力很大的工作叫 a **stressful job**，很难保持工作和家庭之间的平衡英文叫 I find it hard to **keep a balance between work and family**.



## Hometown (Including Traffic & Pollution)

### 家乡（含交通和污染）

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>It's a city <b>in the northeast</b> (东北部) of China.</p> <p>◆ <b>northwest</b> (西北部), <b>southwest</b> (西南部), <b>southeast</b> (东南部), 如果说中国的中部地区, 那就是 <b>central China</b></p>	<p>★ The <b>cost of living</b> (生活成本) there is quite high.</p> <p>◆ high costs of <b>housing</b> (泛指住房), <b>transport</b> and <b>health care</b> (医疗)</p>
<p>It's a <b>coastal city</b> (沿海城市) and has <b>gorgeous</b> (非常美的) beaches.</p>	<p>It has long and <b>windy</b> winters.</p>
<p>It's an <b>inland</b> (内陆的) city and is surrounded by beautiful <b>rolling hills</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>rolling hills</b> 是起伏的小山丘, 而 <b>high mountains</b> 则是高山</p>	<p>It's <b>hot and dry</b> (又热又干燥的) in the summer.</p> <p>☞ “又热又潮湿的” 是 <b>hot and humid</b></p>
<p>★ The city is well-known for its <b>cultural attractions</b> (文化景点).</p> <p>◆ attraction 在英文里经常表示“景点”</p>	<p>Many historical buildings have been <b>replaced</b> by modern <b>high-rise buildings</b> (高层建筑).</p>
<p>★ The city <b>attracts</b> (吸引) many tourists each year.</p>	<p>The locals have become <b>too materialistic</b> (过于物质化的, 只在乎金钱和物质享受的).</p> <p>☞ 英文里常用 <b>the locals</b> 来指“当地人”</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ It has a long and <b>rich history</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>a rich history</b> 并不是“富裕的历史”，而是指“丰富的历史”</p>	<p>Many <b>traditions</b> have been lost. (很多传统被遗忘了)</p>
<p>I live in <b>the countryside</b> (乡村). The <b>cost of living</b> is low and <b>the pace of life</b> (生活节奏) is slow.</p>	<p>Young people tend to think the countryside is boring.</p>
<p>Most people there have a simple and <b>laid-back</b> lifestyle.</p> <p>㊦ 形容词 laid-back 是“心态平和、与世无争的”</p>	<p>★ The <b>pace of life</b> is fast and <b>stressful</b> (让人感觉“压力山大”的).</p>
<p>★ Most people are <b>friendly and helpful</b> and there is <b>a strong sense of community</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>a strong sense of community</b> (很强的“社区感”，很强的社区凝聚力)</p>	<p>I don't even know my neighbours (甚至不认识自己的邻居).</p>
<p>My hometown has lots of things for young people, such as cinemas, <b>karaoke bars</b> and sports centers.</p> <p>㊦ 卡拉 OK 厅叫 <b>karaoke lounge</b> 或者 <b>karaoke bar</b> 都可以，第一次“考察”北京的卡拉 OK 厅时 Pat 真的感觉被震撼到了 (I was totally amazed.), 相比之下英美城市里的卡拉 OK 厅都实在太“低调” (humble) 了 😊</p>	<p>It's not a good place for young people because there aren't many <b>leisure facilities</b> there, and the nightlife is <b>dull and boring</b>.</p> <p>◆ There aren't many <b>job opportunities</b> for young people. “年轻人的就业机会不多”</p>

城市里常见的 **leisure facilities** (休闲设施):

cinemas, concert halls, museums, art galleries (美术馆, 画廊), parks, restaurants, coffee shops, shopping centers, sports centers



## Hometown 家乡

### Traffic & Pollution 交通和污染

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>More and more people can <b>afford</b> (买得起) a car.</p> <p>◆ <b>car owners</b> 有车的人, “车主”</p>	<p>There are too many cars on the road, and it's always hard to find a <b>parking space</b>. (虽然 space 一般不可数, 但“停车位” parking space 在英文里却是可数的)</p>
<p>★ Driving is an important <b>life skill</b> (生活技能).</p> <p>◆ Driving <b>makes my life easier</b>.</p>	<p>I often <b>get stuck in</b> heavy traffic.</p> <p>◆ <b>get stuck in...</b> 是国外生活中相当常用的一个短语: 被……困住</p>
<p>★ It's important to learn how to <b>drive safely</b> and be a <b>polite driver</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>drive safely</b> 安全行车, <b>polite driver</b> 有礼貌的驾驶员</p>	<p>★ There're lots of <b>dangerous drivers</b> (不考虑后果的司机) out there. They just don't <b>follow traffic rules</b> (不遵守交通规则).</p> <p>◆ dangerous drivers 当然应该受到惩罚 (should be punished), 不过今年年初在美国最新公布的一项民意调查显示公众一致认为最可怕的司机其实是 <b>slow drivers</b> 😊</p>
<p>★ We should use <b>public transport</b> (公共交通) more often. Using public transport is more <b>eco-friendly</b> than driving a car.</p> <p>◆ <b>eco-friendly</b> 有益于环保的</p>	<p>Public transport in my hometown is <b>not reliable</b> (不可靠的).</p> <p>◆ The buses <b>never arrive on time</b> (公车从来都不准时到).</p>
<p>★ Many people <b>walk or cycle to work</b>.</p> <p>🗺️ 地道短语 <b>walk or cycle to work</b> 的意思是“步行或骑自行车上班”</p>	<p>★ The buses are <b>overcrowded</b> (过于拥挤的).</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>The city is very <b>walkable</b> . It's easy to <b>get around on foot</b> .</p> <p>◆ <b>walkable</b> (适合步行的) 是西方国家评价城市生活 (urban living) 的重要标准之一, 也可以说 <b>pedestrian-friendly</b> , 人行道在英国叫作 <b>pavement</b> , 斑马线在英国叫 <b>zebra crossing</b></p>	<p>The traffic is always <b>bumper-to-bumper</b> during the <b>rush hour</b> . (上下班高峰期)</p> <p>◆ <b>bumper-to-bumper traffic</b> 就是车行缓慢、“让马路变成停车场”的拥挤交通</p>
<p>★ It's <b>quiet and peaceful</b> (宁静安详的).</p>	<p>The traffic noise really <b>bothers</b> me (很烦人).</p>

When I'm **in a hurry** , I take **the subway** (美国的说法) / **the underground** (英国的说法) / **the Tube** (伦敦人 Londoners 特有的说法)

Pat 指南



- ☆ 比较拿分的交通工具 (即使您没乘坐过也可以放心说, 因为它们都是地道的英文 😊):  
**minibus** (中巴); **shuttle bus** (班车或机场巴士); **ferry** (轮渡); **light railway / light rail** (轻轨); **motorcycle taxi** (“摩的”)
- ☆ 很重的雾霾英文叫作 **thick smog**, 形容雾霾很重的形容词则是 **smoggy**
- ☆ **air pollution** 空气污染, **water pollution** 水污染, **noise pollution** 噪音污染
- ☆ 汽车尾气叫 **car fumes** 或者 **exhaust fumes** 都可以, 而工厂排出的浓烟则是 **factory fumes**





## Films & TV

### 影 视

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>I'm really into <b>animated films</b> (动画片).</p> <p>◆ <b>I'm really into...</b> 在地道英文里就是说自己非常喜欢某类事物、对某类事物很“投入”</p>	<p>Going to the cinema is <b>a waste of time and money</b> (又花时间又花钱)</p>
<p>★ I prefer films with good <b>acting</b> (演技).</p>	<p>The <b>special effects</b> (特效) in this film are <b>amazing</b> (令人惊叹的).</p> <p>🎬 “大片儿”叫 <b>blockbuster</b></p>
<p>He's <b>well-known for his acting skills</b> (他是个“演技派”).</p>	<p>He <b>relies too much on his looks</b> (过度依赖外表, “靠脸吃饭”).</p>
<p>★ I like films with <b>a happy ending</b> (有圆满的结局).</p>	<p>The <b>soundtrack</b> (电影原声音乐) of this film is just okay — nothing special ( “一般般”, 并不是很出色).</p>
<p>★ This film <b>is based on a true story</b> (取材于一个真实的故事).</p>	<p>The <b>storyline</b> of this film is too <b>far-fetched</b>. (故事情节太牵强了)</p> <p>🎬 电影的“故事情节”就是 <b>storyline</b>, 也有些 native speakers 把它叫作 <b>plot</b></p>
<p>★ Some films are <b>fun and entertaining</b> (有趣而且娱乐性很强的).</p> <p>☆ 上座率很高的电影叫作 <b>a box-office hit</b></p>	<p>★ I don't like films that are too <b>predictable</b> (看了开头就知道结尾的那种).</p>
<p>Some films are <b>thought-provoking</b> (发人深思的).</p>	<p>This film is <b>too serious</b> (过于严肃的).</p>
<p>Sci-fi films <b>stimulate our imagination</b> (激发我们的想象力).</p>	<p>◆ <b>sci-fi films</b> 是科幻片, 外星人就叫 <b>aliens</b></p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Some films can <b>bring back good memories</b> (带来美好的回忆).	Some <b>action films</b> (动作片) are too <b>violent</b> (暴力的). 英雄当然就是 <b>heroes</b> , 反派则是 <b>villains</b>
★ This film is <b>moving and unforgettable</b> (很感人的、令人难忘的).	★ It's <b>dull and boring</b> (乏味、枯燥的).
★ This film <b>has a strong cast</b> . (演员的阵容很强大) ◆ cast 就是指“演员的阵容”	My favourite star had <b>a bit part</b> (客串的小角色) in it.
Leonardo DiCaprio <b>played the lead</b> (演主角儿) in this film.	Margot Robbie <b>played opposite him</b> . (和他演对手戏)

## Pat 指南



☆ 高成本电影叫 **big-budget film**, 相应地低成本电影就叫 **small-budget film**

☆ 以下这些闪光的人名都是 Pat 发现国内同学们最容易读错的明星名字, 请仔细听音频:

- **Leonardo DiCaprio** 环保主义者 (environmentalist) 莱昂纳多·迪卡普里奥的名字读错率一直稳居榜首, 这比说“岁月是一把杀猪刀”更让“小李子”感到痛心
- **Beyoncé Knowles** 这位美女曾勇夺格莱美 Best Music Video 大奖, 但其实她的名字正确发音并不是“碧昂斯”
- **Robert Downey Jr.** 漫威 (Marvel Studios) 粉都不喜欢《复联 4》给“钢铁侠” (Iron Man) 安排的命运, 但咱总不能因此就把演员的名字读错了
- **Keanu Reeves** 基努·里维斯有 1/8 的印第安人血统, 所以有一个原住民的名字
- **Emma Watson** 小时候是《哈利·波特》里的 Hermione Granger, 长大了是《美女与野兽》里的 Belle, 在现实生活里还是常春藤盟校 Brown University 的毕业生, 但 Pat 注意到有些同学把她名字里的字母 t 和 s 分开读, 可就不对了
- **Matt Damon** 《拯救大兵瑞恩》里的男主角, 他在 *The Martian* (《火星救援》) 里面的演技也受到很高的评价 (received good reviews), 《长城》(The Great Wall) 里的男主角同样是他



- **David Beckham** 小贝虽然不是影星，但他的姓却总是被国内同学念错，也一起放进来吧

说来说去，名字最不容易发错音的还是超模 **Kate Moss** 和成功摆脱了“单身男神”称号的 **George Clooney**，所以他俩必须红 ☺

In The Cinema (在电影院看电影)	At Home (在家看电影)
★ Cinemas can provide a more <b>fun and enjoyable viewing experience</b> . (提供更有趣、更令人愉快的观赏体验)	It's <b>more convenient</b> (更方便) to watch a film at home.
A cinema <b>screen</b> (屏幕) is much larger than a TV screen.	I have a large <b>collection</b> (收藏) of DVDs.
The colours also look <b>more vivid</b> (更鲜明的).	★ Watching a film at home helps me <b>save time and money</b> (既省时间又省钱). ⊕ 请不要说你有看“盗版碟”(pirated DVDs)的习惯
The <b>sound quality</b> (音质) in the cinema is better than at home.	I have a <b>home cinema system</b> at home. ⊕ 家庭影院系统叫 <b>home cinema system</b> 或者 <b>home theater system</b>
We <b>share the fun and excitement</b> with other people in the audience.	Some people find it hard to <b>concentrate on</b> films at home.

Pat 指南



☆ 还可以说 Cinemas offer a wide variety of (多种多样的) **snacks** (零食).

☆ 三维立体电影就是 **3-D film**

Watching a 3-D film in the cinema can be really **exciting**.



Films & TV 影视  
Television 电视

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Watching TV <b>is fun</b> . It's <b>a good way to relax</b> .	Watching TV is <b>a waste of time</b> (浪费时间).
★ This show is <b>informative</b> . It provides a variety of <b>useful information</b> .  形容词 <b>informative</b> 是“信息量很大的”， <b>a variety of</b> 是“多种多样的”	看电视的人叫作 <b>a TV viewer</b> 或者 <b>TV viewers</b> ，看电视的观众群可以总称为 <b>audience</b>
★ This TV show is very <b>entertaining</b> (娱乐性很强的). It has <b>attracted many viewers</b> (吸引了大量观众).	地道英文里常把能够让人放松的事物称为 <b>a stress-reliever</b>
It's a very <b>creative</b> (有创意的) TV show.	The <b>storyline</b> is too <b>predictable</b> (剧情毫无悬念).
Travel shows can <b>expand our horizons</b> (开阔我们的眼界). They help us learn about other places and other cultures.	On the other hand, the information they provide is <b>not always reliable</b> (并不总是可靠的).
★ Sometimes I just <b>surf through the channels</b> (不停换台寻找自己喜欢的频道, “频道冲浪”).	People who watch too much TV tend to <b>have an unhealthy lifestyle</b> . ◆ <b>have an unhealthy lifestyle</b> 生活方式很不健康
People enjoy <b>conversations</b> (谈话) about the TV shows that they like.	Watching too much TV gives you <b>square eyes</b> . (在英美有一种说法: 看电视太多眼睛会变成方形)



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>Watching TV together helps us <b>build strong family ties</b> .</p> <p>◆ <b>build strong family ties</b> 是“增进亲情”的意思,也可以说 <b>strengthen family ties</b></p>	<p>★ Watching too much TV <b>increases the risk of heart disease and high blood pressure</b> (增加患高血压和心脏病的风险).</p>
<p>Watching TV can help children <b>expand their vocabulary</b> .</p> <p>◆ <b>expand their vocabulary</b> 是“扩大词汇量”</p>	<p>★ Young people tend to <b>copy what they see on TV</b> (模仿他们在电视上看到的内容).</p> <p>◆ <b>violent images</b> 暴力的画面 <b>sexual images</b> 色情的画面</p>
<p>Some <b>TV commercials</b> (电视广告) are <b>a good source of fun</b> .</p> <p>◆ <b>a good source of fun</b> 很好的生活乐趣来源, <b>a good source of information</b> 很好的信息来源</p>	<p>There're too many commercials during <b>prime-time hours</b> (黄金时段), which <b>really bothers me</b> (让我很烦).</p>

Pat 指南



☆ TV programmes 的常见种类:

**TV series** (系列剧), **sitcoms** (情景喜剧), **reality show** (真人秀), **quiz show** (问答节目), **variety show** (综艺节目), **news show** (新闻节目), **game show** (有奖竞赛节目), **travel show** (旅游节目), **documentaries** (纪录片, 例如 Discovery Channel 和 National Geographic Channel 播放的节目), 脱口秀 (这个太简单, 自己说吧) ☺

☆ 系列剧的“一集”叫 **an episode**, “一季”叫 **a season**, 它吸引了很多人来“追剧”的英文叫 **It enjoys a huge following among viewers.**





## Advertising

## 广告

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Some TV commercials are <b>very entertaining</b> (娱乐性很强的).</p> <p>◆ <b>advertisement</b> 可以泛指任何形式的广告, <b>commercial</b> 则是特指电视、收音机或者互联网上面播放的广告</p>	<p>★ They <b>interrupt TV programmes</b> (中断电视节目). That really <b>bothers me</b> (让我很烦).</p>
<p>Some advertisements are fun and <b>creative</b> (有创意的), while others are dull and boring.</p>	<p>a <b>memorable slogan</b> 很容易记住的广告词, 比如 Reebok 的 “I am what I am.”, LG 的 “Life’s good.”, Nike 的 “Just do it.” 和蚂蚁金服的 “每个认真生活的人, 都值得被认真对待。”</p>
<p>They <b>help me better understand</b> new products.</p>	<p>Advertising <b>encourages</b> (鼓励) us to buy things we don’t really need.</p>
<p>★ Good advertisements are <b>informative</b> (信息量很大的).</p>	<p>★ Many advertisements <b>are aimed at</b> children and teenagers.</p> <p>◆ <b>are aimed at...</b> 针对……这个群体</p>
<p>They really <b>attract our attention</b> (吸引我们的注意力).</p> <p>◆ <b>advertising campaign</b> 大规模的广告系列宣传活动</p>	<p>Some advertisements provide <b>false and misleading</b> (虚假的、有误导性的) information.</p>
<p>Advertising <b>makes products more attractive</b> to consumers.</p>	<p>Children often <b>put pressure on</b> their parents to buy the toys advertised on TV.</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>The advertising industry <b>creates many jobs</b> (创造很多就业机会) and <b>contributes to the economy</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>contribute to the economy</b> 为经济做出贡献</p>	<p>Advertising is just a <b>marketing tool</b> (营销手段) for companies.</p>

Pat 指南



☆ 公益广告叫 **public service advertisements**

**Public service advertisements** educate people about health, safety or the environment.



Reading

读书、报纸和杂志

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ I'm <b>an avid reader</b> (特别爱读书的人).</p>	<p>⚠ 只要考到和 reading 有关的题你就必须要想到 <b>an avid</b> /'ævid/ <b>reader</b> 这个说法, 因为在 native speakers 谈读书时它实在是太常用了</p>
<p>★ Reading <b>expands our horizons</b> (开阔我们的眼界).</p>	<p>Watching TV and playing video games can be <b>more entertaining</b> (更有娱乐性的).</p>
<p>★ This book is <b>fun and enjoyable</b> (有趣而且令人愉快的).</p>	<p>This book is <b>dull and boring</b> (乏味、枯燥的).</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
I liked the book so much that I <b>couldn't put it down</b> (爱不释手).	地道英文里还有一种说法是 <b>read a book from cover to cover</b> (从封面一直看到封底, 一页也不舍得错过)
★ Reading English books is a good way to <b>expand my English vocabulary</b> (扩展英语的词汇量).	Our university library doesn't <b>provide</b> many English books.
Electronic books <b>take up less space</b> (占的空间更小) and <b>are easier to carry</b> (更便于携带). ◆ <b>electronic books</b> 电子书, 也可以叫 <b>e-books</b>	I find it harder to <b>concentrate</b> (集中精力) when I read on a <b>screen</b> (屏幕).
E-books are <b>more eco-friendly</b> (更有益于环保的). They help to <b>save trees</b> (保护树木).	Reading e-books for too long really <b>hurts my eyes</b> (伤视力).

## Pat 指南



☆ 说“一本书好看”在地道英文里有个说法叫 **It's a good read**. 语法貌似是错的, 但其实是英文口语里经常听到的一句话。话说 Pat 上学时曾在图书馆找到了一本 *On the Road* (在路上), 拿给图书管理员正准备 check out 时, librarian 突然就来了句: **It's a good read**.

☆ 有几种书值得一说 (虽然并不一定值得一看):

**literary classics** (文学经典), **suspense novels** (悬念小说), **cookery books** (教你做菜的书), **travel guides** (旅行指南)



Reading 读书、报纸和杂志

Newspapers & Magazines 报纸和杂志

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Newspapers are <b>a good source of information</b> (是很好的信息来源).	◆ <b>information</b> 不能加复数, IELTS 口试里同样不能加复数的名词还有 <b>knowledge</b> , <b>advice</b> , <b>behaviour</b> , <b>equipment</b> 和 <b>scenery</b>
Local newspapers tend to <b>focus on</b> things that affect the local area.	Some local newspapers <b>are full of ads</b> (广告太多).
International newspapers <b>cover</b> a wide variety of topics.	🗞 “时事” 叫作 <b>current events</b>
★ The <b>articles</b> (文章) are <b>well-written</b> .	“页面布局很合理的” 英文是 The pages are <b>well laid-out</b> .
<b>Browsing through fashion magazines</b> is a good way to relax. ◆ <b>browse through magazines</b> 是 “翻阅杂志”	This magazine is <b>not very informative</b> (信息量并不是很大).
This magazine <b>is aimed at</b> young readers.	◆ This magazine <b>is aimed at</b> ... (某类人) 的意思是 “这本杂志的目标读者群是……”

Pat 指南



☆ 报纸常见的版块 (sections): **business section** (商务版块), **financial section** (金融版块), **entertainment section** (娱乐版块), **sports section** (体育版块), **classified ads** (分类广告)

☆ 在地道英文里特指报纸或者杂志的销量有一个专门的词叫作 **circulation**。

This newspaper has **a good reputation** (声誉好) and **a large circulation** (销量大)。





## Computers & The Internet

## 计算机和互联网

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Computers <b>make our lives more convenient</b> (更方便).	★ It's important <b>not to rely too much on</b> (不过度地依赖) computers.
<p>★ There are many <b>educational games</b> on the Internet, such as maths games and language games.</p> <p>◆ <b>educational games</b> 益智游戏</p>	Looking at a computer screen for too long <b>hurts my eyes</b> (伤视力).
The Internet has become <b>an indispensable part of our lives</b> (我们生活里不可或缺的一个部分).	★ Many children <b>are addicted to</b> (对……上瘾) computer games.
★ People who have good <b>computer skills</b> tend to <b>have more job opportunities</b> (有更多的就业机会).	People who spend too much time on the Internet tend to <b>have an unhealthy lifestyle</b> (过着不健康的生活方式).
<p>The Internet is <b>a good source of information</b> (是很好的信息来源).</p> <p>◆ <b>search engine</b> 搜索引擎, <b>find information easily</b> 轻松地找到信息</p>	Some websites <b>contain violent images</b> (含有暴力的画面).
<p>★ Online shopping helps us <b>save time and money</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>save time and money</b> 既省钱又省时间</p>	<p><b>Online crime</b> (网络犯罪) is increasing.</p> <p>⊕ 网络安全叫作 <b>online security</b>, 计算机病毒是 <b>computer virus</b>, 恶意软件是 <b>malware</b></p>



Pat 指南



- ☆ 电子邮件 (email) 的好处是 **free, easy to send** 而且 **can be delivered very quickly**
- ☆ 书信的好处则是 **can better express our feelings** (能更好地表达我们的感受), 而且 **Business letters are more formal than business emails.**

## Computers & The Internet 计算机和互联网

### Handwriting 笔迹

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Good handwriting is easy to read.</p> <p>◆ <b>neat and tidy</b> 干净整洁的</p>	<p><b>Messy</b> (混乱的, 潦草的) <b>handwriting</b> can be <b>confusing</b> and <b>annoying</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>confusing</b> 令人困惑的, <b>annoying</b> 让人很烦的, <b>embarrassing</b> 令人羞愧的, 让人很“囧”的</p>
<p>Handwriting needs to <b>be practised regularly</b> (经常练习, 经常实践).</p>	<p>★ Children shouldn't <b>rely too much on typing</b> (打字).</p>



## Mobile Phones

### 手机

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Mobile phones help us <b>keep in touch with</b> (保持联系) family and friends.</p> <p>☎ 与亲友“保持联系”的另一种地道说法是 <b>stay connected with family and friends</b></p>	<p>★ These days, people have fewer <b>face-to-face conversations</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>face-to-face conversations</b> 面对面的谈话</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>We can also <b>surf the Internet</b> , <b>listen to music</b> and <b>take photos</b> with our mobile phones.</p> <p>☎ 上网在英美生活里也可以叫 <b>browse the Web</b></p>	<p>★ Many people <b>rely too much on</b> (过度地依赖) mobile phones.</p> <p>◆ <b>are addicted to...</b> 对……上瘾</p>
<p>Smartphones are <b>fun and entertaining</b> (娱乐性很强的).</p> <p>◆ <b>smartphone</b> 智能手机</p>	<p>Playing <b>mobile games</b> (手机游戏) can be <b>an expensive hobby</b> .</p>
<p>Text messages are <b>less expensive than</b> phone calls.</p>	<p>I call my friends when I need to have real <b>conversations</b> (谈话) with them.</p>
<p>★ Text messages work better in a <b>public place</b> (公共场所).</p>	<p>Making phone calls is more likely to <b>distract</b> other people around me.</p> <p>◆ <b>more likely to...</b> 更有可能…… <b>distract others</b> 干扰别人的注意力</p>
<p>★ We have more time to think before <b>responding to</b> (回应) a text message.</p>	<p>Using <b>emoticons</b> (表情符号, 也可以叫 <b>emojis</b>) in text messages is fun, but they may cost extra money.</p>
ANDROID PHONE	iPhone
<p>★ <b>Android phones</b> are very <b>user-friendly</b> (便于使用的).</p> <p>◆ Android phones 基于安卓系统的手机, 也可以叫 <b>Android-based phones</b></p>	<p>It seems iPhones are <b>more reliable</b> (更可靠的).</p> <p>☎ 如果您觉得安卓手机更可靠考官也同样没脾气, 他 / 她的任务是判断你的英文口语是否地道, 而不是鉴定你到底是“果粉”还是“果黑” 😊</p>



ANDROID PHONE	iPhone
They are less expensive.	My iPhone is very <b>thin and light</b> (很薄很轻的).
There're more free <b>apps</b> (应用程序) available for Android phones.	The screen is <b>gorgeous</b> (特别“靓”的).



## Clothing, Jewellery & Shopping

## 服装，首饰和购物

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ I like <b>casual clothes</b>, such as T-shirts and jeans (牛仔裤).</p> <p>◆ <b>casual clothes</b> 休闲服装, “帽衫儿”叫作 <b>hoodie</b>, 休闲短裤当然就是 <b>shorts</b></p>	<p>★ People are supposed to wear <b>formal clothes</b>, like <b>white shirts</b> (白衬衣) and <b>trousers</b> (长裤) in the office.</p> <p>◆ <b>suit</b> 是指套装, 比如 <b>business suit</b> 就是“西装”, 关于着装的规定叫作 <b>dress code</b></p>
<p>★ Casual clothes make us feel more <b>comfortable and relaxed</b>.</p>	<p>Formal clothes make us look <b>serious and professional</b> (职业的).</p>
<p>I <b>prefer comfort over fashion</b> (觉得舒适比时尚更重要).</p>	<p>Many people are <b>fashion victims</b>. They choose fashion over comfort (宁可不舒服也要看起来“潮”).</p> <p>◆ <b>fashion victim</b> 过度追逐时尚的人</p>
<p>★ Clothing is a good way to <b>express ourselves</b> (表达自己的一种方式).</p>	<p>Some people have <b>bad spending habits</b> (不良的消费习惯).</p> <p>◆ <b>buy things on an impulse</b> (冲动地购物).</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p><b>Designer clothes</b> are often considered <b>status symbols</b> (身份和地位的象征).</p> <p>◆ <b>designer clothes</b> 就是地道英文里对“名牌服装”最常用的说法</p>	<p>These days, people have become too <b>materialistic</b> (过于物质化的, 只在乎金钱和物质享受的).</p>
<p>Wearing jewellery makes me <b>feel more confident</b> (感觉更自信).</p>	<p>I am very <b>forgetful</b> (健忘的) and <b>lose things easily</b>.</p>
<p>Wearing jewellery is <b>a good way to express myself</b>.</p>	<p>Some people wear expensive jewellery to <b>show off their wealth</b> (炫富).</p>
<p>I believe it <b>brings me good luck</b> (给我带来好运).</p>	<p>在地道英文里如果说 <b>It's my lucky charm</b>, 就是说你相信这件首饰会给你带来好运气</p>
<p>It was a birthday gift from my parents so it <b>has a lot of personal meaning to me</b> (对我来说有重要的个人意义).</p>	<p>英美生活里常见的 jewellery 有: <b>wedding ring</b> (婚戒), <b>engagement ring</b> (订婚戒指), <b>graduation ring</b> (有些英美大学里的毕业生在毕业典礼时戴的戒指, 而且很多人到毕业后也一直戴着), <b>earrings</b> (耳环), <b>necklace</b> (比较细而且有装饰的项链, 大多数的女士项链是 necklace), <b>chain</b> (比较粗而且不带装饰的项链, 多数的男式项链是 chain), <b>bracelet</b> (手镯或手链英文里都叫 bracelet)</p>
<p>I wear it <b>simply because</b> it looks good.</p> <p>◆ jewellery 是不可数名词, 如果说“一件首饰”, 请说 <b>a piece of jewellery</b></p>	
<p>I shop till I drop (生命不息, 购物不止, “买买买”).</p> <p>👤 这是喜欢“血拼”的 native speakers 特别爱说的一句话, 也可以说 I'm <b>a real shopaholic</b> (如假包换的“购物狂”).</p>	<p><b>Consumer culture</b> encourages people to buy more than they need.</p> <p>◆ <b>consumer culture</b> 崇尚消费的文化 <b>consumer society</b> 崇尚消费的社会</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>Many people <b>follow the latest trends</b> because they want to look “cool” or popular.</p> <p>◆ <b>keep up with fashion trends</b> 追求时尚、紧跟潮流</p>	<p>I just <b>stick to</b> (坚持) my own style.</p>
<p>★ Online shopping helps us <b>save time and money</b>. It's also <b>more eco-friendly</b> (更环保).</p>	<p>I can't <b>try on clothes</b> (试穿) online.</p>

Pat 指南



☆ 卖服装和饰品的精品店叫作什么？在英美最常用的一个词是 **boutique** (请仔细听音频里对这个词的正确发音)

☆ “忠实的顾客”叫 **loyal customers**



## Weather & Seasons

### 天气与季节

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ I like <b>bright and sunny</b> (阳光灿烂的) weather.</p>	<p>Rainy weather <b>affects my mood</b> (影响我的心情).</p> <p>◆ Heavy rain <b>makes driving difficult</b> (导致行车困难) or even dangerous.</p>
<p>★ Sunny and warm weather is <b>perfect for outdoor activities</b>, such as jogging (慢跑), camping (宿营) and hiking (徒步旅行, 远足).</p>	<p><b>sunny and breezy weather</b> 是“风和日丽的天气”</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>I like <b>light rain</b> (小雨). The sound of <b>raindrops</b> (雨点儿) falling on the ground is very relaxing.</p>	<p>But I feel <b>upset</b> when it <b>pours</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>drizzle</b> 下小雨, <b>pour</b> 下大雨, 描述心情不好时 <b>upset</b> 极为常用, 就像中文里说“郁闷的”</p>
<p>★ I like walking in light rain. It makes me <b>feel fresh and energetic</b>.</p> <p>📖 短语 <b>feel fresh and energetic</b> 的意思是“感觉很有活力”</p>	<p>Heavy rain can make the road <b>muddy</b> and <b>slippery</b> and cause traffic jams. It may even cause <b>flooding</b> (洪水).</p> <p>◆ <b>muddy</b> 泥泞的, <b>slippery</b> 很滑的</p>
<p>★ This city has <b>four distinct seasons</b> (分明的四季).</p>	<p>常见的恶劣天气 (bad weather): <b>thunderstorm</b> (暴风雨), <b>snowstorm</b> (暴风雪) 和 <b>thick fog</b> (浓雾)</p>
<p>The spring is <b>warm and pleasant</b> (温暖的, 令人愉快的). Everything feels so <b>fresh</b> and most plants <b>bloom</b> in the spring.</p> <p>📖 开花 <b>bloom</b>, 白天更长, 夜晚更短 The days are <b>longer</b> and the nights are <b>shorter</b>.</p>	<p>The spring is very short.</p>
<p>The summer is <b>mild</b> (温和的) and <b>enjoyable</b>.</p>	<p>The summer is <b>hot and humid</b> (又热又潮湿的).</p>
<p>The city looks so beautiful with the <b>autumn foliage</b>.</p> <p>📖 短语 <b>autumn foliage</b> 是指秋叶, foliage 不能加复数, “观赏秋叶”的英文是 <b>view the autumn foliage</b></p>	<p>It gets <b>chilly</b> in the autumn.</p> <p>◆ Pat 在中国时注意到有的英语老师教学生用 <b>chilly</b> 这个词表示“很冷的”, 其实在地道英文里 <b>chilly</b> 只是“凉嗖嗖的”, 而 cold 或者 freezing 才是表示“很冷的”</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>It's a perfect place for <b>winter sports</b> (冬季运动).</p> <p>◆ <b>skating</b> 滑冰, <b>skiing</b> 滑雪</p>	<p>The winter is cold, <b>windy</b> (风很大的) and <b>snowy</b> (连续下雪的).</p>

Pat 指南



- ☆ 中文里的“雪花”在地道英语里不能说 snowflower ✗, 而是要说 **snowflakes** ✓;  
“堆雪人儿”不能说 pile a snowman ✗, 而要说 **build a snowman** ✓
- ☆ 说自己喜欢某个季节的原因也可以是 **My birthday is in the spring / summer / autumn / winter.** ☺



The Arts

音乐、绘画和摄影

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Listening to music is a good way to <b>relax</b>.</p>	<p>I've never been to a <b>live concert</b> (现场音乐会).</p> <p>◆ live 作形容词时的发音是 /laɪv/</p>
<p>This song makes me feel <b>happy and energetic</b>.</p>	<p>Loud music can <b>distract drivers</b> (干扰司机的注意力).</p>
<p>Classical music (古典音乐) makes me <b>feel calm and relaxed</b>.</p>	<p>Some people think classical music is <b>dull and boring</b>.</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
This is a <b>memorable</b> (很容易记住的) song.	Some country songs <b>sound similar to</b> (听起来很相似) others. ◆ <b>country music</b> 是特指美国的乡村音乐, 而 <b>folk music</b> 则可以指中国、英国等任何国家的传统民族音乐, 也就是“民乐”
★ Playing <b>musical instruments</b> can <b>make children more intelligent</b> (更聪明的). ◆ <b>boost brain development</b> 促进大脑的发育	Learning to play a musical instrument <b>takes time and energy</b> (需要投入时间和精力).
Playing musical instruments can help to <b>increase children's concentration</b> (提高儿童们的注意力).	Learning to play an instrument takes a lot of <b>patience</b> (耐心) and <b>practice</b> (练习).
★ Playing musical instruments is <b>a good way to express ourselves</b> (表达自己感受的一种好方法).	These days, learning to play an instrument can be <b>very expensive</b> .
This song is <b>moving and unforgettable</b> (感人的、令人难忘的).	This song <b>lacks depth</b> (缺乏深度).
Many people go to live concerts (现场音乐会) to <b>see</b> their favourite musicians <b>in person</b> . ◆ <b>see... in person</b> 看到……本人, 看到“活的” 😊	Concert tickets can be <b>pricey</b> . ⚠ 英美生活里常用 <b>pricey</b> 表示 expensive 的意思
We can <b>make new friends</b> at rock concerts.	Too many people <b>scream</b> (尖叫) at rock concerts.



The Arts 音乐、绘画和摄影

Drawing & Painting 绘画

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Painting is a good way to <b>reduce stress</b> .	I can't paint well. I just paint for fun.
Drawing and painting skills can help us better <b>appreciate</b> (欣赏) works of art. ◆ <b>works of art</b> 艺术品	It <b>takes time and energy</b> to learn to paint well.
★ Drawing and painting can make children <b>more creative</b> (更有创造力的).	Students should spend more time on <b>core subjects</b> (核心课程), such as language, maths and science.
Some paintings are <b>thought-provoking</b> (发人深思的).	I can't understand <b>abstract paintings</b> (抽象画). ◆ <b>realistic paintings</b> 写实的画, 具象画

Pat 指南



☆ native speakers 说绘画、摄影等有创造力的爱好时, 常会用到 **It's a creative hobby**. 这句话, 既不难说, 而且又很地道

The Arts 音乐、绘画和摄影

Photography 摄影

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Taking photos <b>is a good way to express ourselves</b> (表达自己感受的一种好方法). ◆ Photography is <b>a creative hobby</b> (有创造力的爱好).	We need to make sure we don't <b>invade other people's privacy</b> (侵犯别人的隐私) when we take photos. ◆ <b>bother others</b> 让别人很烦



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Photos can <b>bring back fond memories</b> (可以带来美好的回忆).</p>	<p>Photos and videos <b>take up a lot of space</b> (占用很多空间) on my mobile phone.</p>
<p>My mobile phone has a <b>built-in camera</b> (内置相机).</p>	<p>I can easily <b>slip it into my pocket</b> (轻松地放进口袋).</p>
<p><b>Taking selfies</b> is fun.</p> <p>◆ <b>take selfies</b> “玩儿自拍”</p>	<p>★ Many people <b>are addicted to</b> (对……上瘾) taking selfies.</p>
<p>Good photos <b>capture precious moments in life</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>capture precious moments in life</b> “捕捉人生里的宝贵瞬间”, 它是 native speakers 谈摄影时特别爱用的一个 good phrase</p>	<p><b>Lighting</b> (光线) is important to taking good pictures.</p>
<p>Many people <b>share photos online</b> (在网络上分享照片).</p> <p>◆ <b>photo-sharing website</b> 照片分享网站, 例如 Instagram</p>	<p>Some people use <b>Photoshop</b> to make their photos look better.</p> <p>◆ <b>profile photo</b> “头像” 照片</p>

Pat 指南



☆ **portrait** 和 **landscape photo** 分别是人像和风景照片

☆ 随时随地“抓拍”叫作 **snap some shots**

☆ “一个……百万像素的相机”英文是 **a... megapixel camera**





## People

### 家人、朋友、邻居、团队成员

FAMILY (家人)	FRIENDS (朋友)
My parents <b>are in their 40s / 50s / 60s...</b> 我的家长 40 多岁 (或者 50 多岁、60 多岁.....)	Most of my friends <b>are around my age</b> (和我年龄相仿).
They <b>work full-time</b> (全职工作). ◆ <b>work part-time</b> 兼职工作 <b>have retired</b> 已经退休了	★ My friends and I <b>share the same interests</b> (有共同的兴趣爱好). 📞 也可以说 <b>have common interests</b>
My parents <b>are my role models</b> (是我的榜样). 📞 英美的年轻人说自己很敬佩父母时都爱这么说	★ We <b>get on very well</b> (关系非常好, “合得来”).
My parents are always <b>understanding and patient</b> with me (很体谅我而且很有耐心).	My friends can always <b>cheer me up</b> (让我开心、振作起来) when I'm <b>upset</b> (郁闷的).
My parents are very <b>strict</b> (要求很严格的).	★ Most of my friends are very <b>sociable</b> (喜欢社交的、外向的).
★ I use the Internet to <b>keep in touch with</b> my parents. ◆ <b>keep in touch</b> 保持联系, 网络摄像头叫作 <b>webcam</b>	<b>Hanging out with my friends</b> makes me happy. ◆ <b>hang out</b> 休闲放松
I have no <b>siblings</b> . ◆ <b>siblings</b> 是泛指“兄弟姐妹”, <b>cousins</b> 是泛指“表兄弟或者表姐妹”	It's easy to <b>make new friends</b> (结交新朋友) online. ◆ <b>online forum</b> 在线论坛, <b>chatroom</b> 聊天室, <b>social networking websites</b> 社交网站, <b>online community</b> 网络社区



FAMILY (家人)	FRIENDS (朋友)
★ Having meals together as a family can <b>strengthen family ties</b> (增进亲情).	Some people choose to <b>meet their online friends in person</b> (“见网友”).
My parents give me good advice about my <b>education and career choices</b> .	My friends often give me advice about <b>food, shopping and entertainment</b> .
I help my parents with <b>housework</b> (家务). ◆ <b>do the dishes</b> (洗碗刷盘子) <b>do the laundry</b> (洗衣服) <b>do the cleaning</b> (打扫房间)	We shouldn't <b>take our parents or friends for granted</b> (我们不应该把家长或朋友为我们做的事看成是理所应当的).
These days, people tend to live in small <b>nuclear families</b> rather than large <b>extended families</b> . ◆ <b>nuclear family</b> 只有父母和孩子一起住的小家庭, <b>extended family</b> 三代人甚至四代人一起住的大家庭	I <b>live alone</b> (独自生活) because I like being <b>independent</b> (独立的). But sometimes I <b>feel lonely and unhappy</b> . ⊕ 只要英文地道, 考官就会很愿意和你交流, 虽然你不是黄致列 😊
The <b>one-child policy</b> (独生子女政策) has been changed.	Now <b>married couples</b> are allowed to have two children.
Many grandparents <b>help with childcare</b> (帮助照看孩子).	Some grandparents <b>spoil</b> (溺爱) <b>their grandchildren</b> .

Pat 指南



☆ “忠实的朋友”叫作 **loyal friends**, 如果你觉得自己的朋友总是很可靠, 除了可以说 I can always **trust them**. 口语里也常说 I can always **count on them**.



People 家人、朋友、邻居、团队成员

## Neighbours 邻居

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ My neighbours are very <b>friendly and helpful</b> (很友好而且乐于助人的).</p>	<p>My neighbours are <b>unfriendly and unhelpful</b>. They don't even return things they've borrowed from me.</p> <p>☹ 如果这么说, 那就要满腔悲愤的 ☹</p>
<p>★ They are <b>polite and respectful</b> (有礼貌、尊重别人的).</p>	<p>They are <b>rude and noisy</b>.</p>
<p>They never ask questions that are <b>too personal</b>.</p> <p>◆ They <b>accept parcels for me</b> (帮我收快递) when I'm not at home.</p>	<p>They often have <b>noisy parties</b> (吵闹的聚会).</p> <p>☹ 英美人普遍重视隐私 (value their privacy), 所以 <b>nosy neighbours</b> (喜欢“打听事儿”的邻居) 和 <b>noisy neighbours</b> (吵闹的邻居) 一样都不受欢迎</p>
<p>★ I <b>know</b> my neighbours <b>quite well</b> (很熟悉自己的邻居).</p> <p>◆ We <b>get on well</b> (关系好, “合得来”).</p>	<p>They often <b>play loud music</b> and their dog <b>barks</b> (狗叫) at night. That really <b>bothers me</b> (让我很烦).</p>
<p>I see them at least <b>a few times a week</b>.</p>	<p>I <b>rarely see</b> my neighbours (很少见到) although they live next door.</p>

Pat 指南



☆ 住在“隔壁”的邻居叫作 **my next-door neighbours**, 也可以说 **They live next door**.



People 家人、朋友、邻居、团队成员  
Team Members 团队成员

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Teamwork (团队合作) can <b>boost our efficiency</b> .</p> <p>◆ <b>boost our efficiency</b> 提升我们的效率</p>	<p>Some team members may <b>lack teamwork skills</b> (缺乏团队合作的技能).</p>
<p>★ Team members need to <b>work closely together</b> (紧密地协作).</p> <p>◆ <b>work closely together</b> 里面的 <b>work</b> 不仅可以指工作, 也可以指学习、运动等需要认真努力才能完成的事情</p>	<p>Some team members <b>don't feel motivated</b> (感觉没有动力).</p> <p>◆ Sometimes team members <b>don't work well together</b> .</p>
<p>We need to work closely with our <b>team-mates</b> (队友) to <b>achieve our common goal</b> (实现共同的目标).</p>	<p>★ Some of them are <b>selfish</b> (自私的) and <b>unkind</b> (不友善的).</p>
<p><b>A strong team spirit</b> (很强的团队精神) can help the team <b>achieve success</b> (获得成功).</p>	<p>They <b>don't care about</b> their teammates.</p>

Pat 指南



☆ “团队运动” 就是 **team sport**, 例如: **basketball**, **football** 和 **volleyball** (排球):

Team sports help children develop their **communication skills** (沟通能力).





## Collection

## 收藏

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Collecting stamps can be <b>a lifetime hobby</b> (终生的爱好).	<p>★ <b>I used to</b> collect stamps as a child. <b>But now I</b> collect music CDs.</p> <p>◆ <b>I used to... as a child. But now I...</b> 是 native speakers 在对比自己童年曾经有过的习惯和现在的习惯有什么不同的时候特别常用的一个句型</p>
Collecting DVDs is <b>fun and enjoyable</b> (有趣而且令人愉快的).	<p>It can be <b>an expensive hobby</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>Blu-ray</b> 蓝光影碟</p>
Some people think of collecting <b>works of art</b> as <b>a good investment</b> (很好的投资). ◆ <b>works of art</b> 艺术品	Many people collect things for <b>pleasure</b> (乐趣), not for <b>profit</b> (利润).
Collecting things is a good way to <b>gain new knowledge</b> (获取新的知识).	<p>Some people collect <b>rare things</b> just to <b>show them off</b> (炫耀).</p> <p>◆ <b>rare</b> 稀有的</p>

### Pat 指南



☆ 几种常见收藏品: **stamps** (邮票), **music CDs** (音乐光盘), **coins** (硬币), **antiques** (古董), **souvenirs** (旅游纪念品)

☆ 要说自己收藏了很多的……, native speakers 会说 **I have a large** (或者 **big**) **collection of...**:

I have **a large collection of** DVDs.





## Buildings

## 住所，博物馆，图书馆，老建筑

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>My flat <b>is just a five-minute-walk from</b> my university campus.</p> <p>🏠 也可以说 <b>is just a short walk from...</b></p>	<p>It's very far from where I work.</p>
<p>I live near a convenient <b>bus route</b> (公车线).</p>	<p>It's in a friendly <b>neighbourhood</b> (居民区), but the location is not convenient at all.</p>
<p>The living room is <b>spacious and bright</b> (宽敞明亮的) and it has <b>a nice view of</b> the city.</p> <p>🏠 客厅里的常见装饰 (decorations) 有:  <b>potted plants</b> (盆栽植物)  <b>family photos</b> (家庭合影)  <b>paintings</b> (绘画)  <b>posters</b> (海报)</p>	<p>The living room is a bit dark because the windows are small, and I don't like the <b>wall colour</b>.</p> <p>🏠 如果说“想重新装饰这个房间”，地道英文会说 <b>redecorate</b> this room, 重新刷漆是 <b>repaint</b> the room, 换窗帘是 change the <b>curtains</b>, 换家具是 <b>replace</b> the furniture</p>
<p>★ The bedroom is <b>nice and comfortable</b>.</p> <p>🏠 房间很舒适也可以说 <b>It's nice and cosy</b>.</p>	<p>The bedroom is only big enough for a bed.</p>
<p>My favourite room is the kitchen because I really <b>enjoy cooking</b> for my family and friends.</p>	<p>There's not enough <b>storage space</b> (储存物品的空间) in the kitchen.</p>



**Buildings** 住所, 博物馆, 图书馆, 老建筑

## Museums 博物馆

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Good museums are both <b>informative</b> (信息量很大的) and <b>entertaining</b> (很有娱乐性的). Visitors can <b>gain new knowledge</b> (获取新知识) and have fun at the same time.	Some museums focus too much on <b>making a profit</b> (营利).
Visiting museums is a good way to <b>expand our horizons</b> (开阔眼界).	Some museums don't provide <b>hands-on activities</b> (可以实际动手操作的活动).
★ Some museums <b>provide free admission</b> (提供免费参观).	Most museums <b>charge admission fees</b> (收取参观费).
★ Popular museums can <b>contribute to tourism</b> (为旅游业做贡献).	Local visitors have already paid money to the museums through the tax system. They should <b>get free admission</b> (获得免费参观).
★ This museum has <b>a large collection</b> (大量的馆藏) <b>of</b> interesting objects.	Many museums <b>lack funding</b> (缺乏资金).
It provides a wide variety of <b>exhibitions</b> (展览).	Some museums are boring and don't <b>attract many visitors</b> .
History museums <b>bring history to life</b> (让历史变得鲜明生动).	如果是科技博物馆, 那就可以说 It <b>brings science and technology to life</b> .

### Pat 指南



☆ 英美最常见的博物馆类型有: **history museum** (历史博物馆), **natural history museum** (自然史博物馆, 里面有很多的 fossils), **science and technology museum** (科技博物馆), **space museum** (航天博物馆), **art gallery** (艺术博物馆, 例如伦敦的 the National Gallery), **children's museum** (儿童博物馆), **wax museum** (蜡像馆) 和 **military museum** (军事博物馆)



Buildings 住所, 博物馆, 图书馆, 老建筑

## 图书馆 Libraries

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Public libraries are a good <b>source of information</b> (信息来源).	Many public libraries <b>lack funding</b> (缺乏资金).
★ This library provides a <b>friendly atmosphere</b> (友好的氛围). ◆ a <b>quiet atmosphere</b> 安静的氛围	I only go there <b>before exams</b> .
★ It has a <b>large collection</b> (大量的馆藏) of books and magazines.	It only has a <b>small collection of</b> English books.
It also has an area with large tables for <b>group discussions</b> (小组讨论).	The librarians (图书管理员) are not very <b>helpful</b> .
The library has a <b>computer lab</b> (计算机房) where users can <b>search for information</b> on the Internet. 📡 一个设备齐全的图书馆叫作 a <b>well-equipped library</b>	The <b>Internet connection</b> is too slow. ◆ The Wi-Fi <b>hardly works</b> (几乎不能用).

Buildings 住所, 博物馆, 图书馆, 老建筑

## Old Buildings 老建筑

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Old buildings show us how people <b>lived or worked in the past</b> . 📡 任何历史悠久的建筑都可以称为 <b>old building</b> , 但是只有曾经有过重要历史意义的老建筑才可以叫 <b>historic building</b>	★ New buildings can <b>better meet our needs</b> (更好地满足我们的需要).



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Historic buildings are <b>an important part of our cultural heritage</b> (文化遗产).</p> <p>◆ <b>heritage</b> 不能加 s, <b>historic site</b> 历史遗址</p>	<p>Some of them are <b>unsafe</b> (不安全的).</p>
<p>They make cities <b>more attractive</b> (更吸引人的).</p>	<p>★ They need <b>regular repairs</b> (定期的维修).</p>
<p>★ Historic buildings can <b>attract many tourists</b> (吸引很多的游客) and <b>contribute to the local economy</b> (为当地的经济做贡献).</p>	<p>Repairing them is very expensive.</p>



## Sports & Outdoor Activities

### 运动和户外活动

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Sports are <b>fun and enjoyable</b> (有趣而且令人愉快的).</p>	<p>Many people <b>surf the Internet</b> or watch TV to relax.</p> <p>㊦ “上网”也有很多 native speakers 用 <b>browse the Web</b> 这个短语</p>
<p>Playing badminton (打羽毛球) is a good way to <b>keep fit</b> and <b>have fun at the same time</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>is a good form of exercise</b>: 是一种很好的锻炼方式</p>	<p>Many children spend too much time in front of a computer or TV <b>screen</b> (屏幕). They really need to reduce their <b>screen time</b>.</p> <p>㊦ 地道英文里常把盯着电子产品屏幕的时间称为 <b>screen time</b></p>
<p>★ Playing sports can <b>reduce the risk of heart disease and high blood pressure</b> (减少患心脏病和高血压的风险).</p> <p>◆ <b>improve our health</b> 改善我们的健康</p>	<p>More and more people are <b>overweight</b> and find it hard to <b>lose weight</b> (减肥).</p> <p>◆ <b>overweight</b> 的语气要比 fat 客气一点, 但现实是一样的残酷</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Playing sports is <b>a good way to make new friends</b> (结识新朋友的好方法).</p>	<p>Many people prefer to <b>make friends online</b> (在网上交友).</p>
<p>Parents should encourage their children to <b>have an active lifestyle</b> (经常运动锻炼的生活方式).</p> <p>◆ <b>more energetic</b> 更有活力的</p>	<p>Governments have not done enough to <b>promote healthy lifestyles</b> (促进健康的生活方式).</p> <p>◆ <b>exercise regularly</b> 经常锻炼, <b>have a healthy diet</b> 保持健康的饮食结构</p>
<p>★ Team sports (团队运动), such as football, basketball and <b>volleyball</b> (排球), can help us develop our <b>teamwork skills</b> (团队合作的能力) and <b>communication skills</b> (沟通能力).</p>	<p>Individual sports (个人运动), such as <b>jogging</b> (慢跑), swimming and <b>skiing</b> (滑雪), can <b>boost our concentration</b> and <b>self-discipline</b> (提高我们的注意力和自制力).</p>
<p>Extreme sports, such as <b>bungee jumping</b> (蹦极), <b>rock climbing</b> (攀岩) and <b>rafting</b> (漂流), can <b>give people a great sense of achievement</b> (极大的成就感).</p>	<p>They are <b>very challenging</b> (很有挑战的) and can be <b>dangerous</b> (危险的).</p>
<p><b>Televised</b> (电视播放的) sports events <b>attract many viewers</b> (吸引很多观众).</p> <p>📺 看电视的人叫 <b>TV viewers</b>, 而去现场看体育比赛的人叫 <b>spectators</b></p>	<p>Some sports stars <b>earn too much money</b>.</p>
<p>Professional athletes (职业运动员) need many years of <b>training</b> (训练) to develop the skills that lead to success in their sports.</p>	<p>We should <b>value</b> scientists, teachers and nurses more highly because they contribute more to society.</p> <p>◆ <b>value</b> 当动词时是“重视、珍视”的意思</p>



Pat 指南



☆ 关于运动，您如果能再记住这三个名词就更好了：**strength**（力量），**speed**（速度）和 **endurance**（耐力）

Sports & Outdoor Activities 运动和户外活动

户外活动 Outdoor Activities

FOR（正方）	AGAINST（反方）
Outdoor activities, such as <b>hiking</b> （徒步旅行，远足）， <b>camping</b> （宿营） and <b>fishing</b> （钓鱼），help us <b>get closer to nature</b> （更加接近大自然）.	Outdoor activities <b>depend on</b> （取决于……）weather conditions.
★ I can <b>enjoy the sun</b> and <b>fresh air</b> .	Sometimes I have to change my plan because of <b>bad weather</b> .
★ Outdoor activities help me <b>recharge my batteries</b> . 📌 在英文口语里说 <b>recharge my batteries</b> “给自己充电”的意思是“让身心恢复良好的状态”，它跟“周末上补习班”完全无关 😊	Outdoor activities can be very <b>tiring</b> （让人疲惫的）.
Doing outdoor activities as a family is a good way to <b>strengthen family ties</b> （增进亲情）.	Many parents find it hard to <b>keep a work-family balance</b> （保持工作和家庭之间的合理平衡）.
★ Outdoor activities can help children <b>learn about nature</b> （了解大自然）.	These days, many children <b>spend too much time in front of</b> a computer or TV screen.
★ I <b>feel fresh and energetic</b> when I'm outdoors. ◆ <b>feel fresh and energetic</b> 感觉很有活力	Some outdoor activities, like <b>rock climbing</b> （攀岩） and <b>rafting</b> （漂流），are very <b>challenging</b> （有挑战的） and can be dangerous.



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Outdoor activities can <b>boost our immune system</b> (增强我们的免疫机能).	We may <b>get wet in the rain</b> and <b>catch a cold</b> (感冒).
Cycling is a good way to <b>keep fit</b> .	I would have to <b>share the road</b> with cars and buses.
Bicycles don't need <b>fuel</b> (燃料).	I <b>don't feel safe</b> cycling in busy areas.
Bicycles don't pollute the air (不污染空气). They're very <b>eco-friendly</b> . (自行车的更多好处请看 p. 255)	I would have to breathe in (吸入) lots of car fumes (汽车尾气).

Pat 指南



☆ 中外小朋友都喜欢的 3 种户外活动:

kite-flying (放风筝), hide-and-seek (捉迷藏), tag (基本就等于国内小朋友们玩的“捉人”)

☆ native speakers 谈论户外活动时特别爱说的一句话是 I can soak up some vitamin D (吸收一些维生素 D). 因为据说阳光可以促进皮肤生成维生素 D ☺



## Travel 旅行

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Travelling helps me <b>get away from it all</b> (摆脱日常的各种琐事).	Travelling abroad is expensive.
<p>★ We can <b>explore</b> (探索) new places and <b>meet new people</b>.</p> <p>📖 英文里的 <b>new people</b> 可不是“刚结婚的人”，而是指“以前不认识的人，新认识的人”</p>	<p>Many tourists don't have the <b>opportunity</b> (机会) to talk with <b>the locals</b> (当地人).</p> <p>📖 跟团旅行叫 <b>group tour</b> 或者 <b>guided tour</b>, 自助游叫作 <b>independent travel</b></p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Travelling alone <b>gives me more freedom</b> (给我更多的自由). I can have <b>more flexible</b> (更灵活的) travel plans.	Travelling alone can be <b>boring</b> .
Travelling with friends <b>is more fun than</b> travelling alone.	Sometimes we <b>argue</b> (争论) about what to do.
★ Travelling with friends is a good way to <b>strengthen friendships</b> (增进友情). 🗣️ 增进亲情是 <b>strengthen family ties</b>	My friends are always too busy to travel.
We can <b>share the experience</b> together.	We spend too much time talking to each other.
★ Tourism <b>contributes to</b> (做贡献) the economy.	Tourism may <b>damage the environment</b> (破坏环境).
Tourists spend money on hotels, transport, food, entertainment and <b>souvenirs</b> (旅行纪念品).	Some tourists don't respect (尊重) the <b>local traditions</b> (当地的传统).

Pat 指南



☆ 在英美，年轻人旅行时很爱说的一句话是：I prefer to travel light (轻装旅行，只带很少的行李)。

☆ native speakers 在说旅行的好处时经常会用到一个短语叫 recharge my batteries (“给自己充电”)。请注意：这个 phrase 在英文里是指“让疲劳的身心恢复良好的状态”，而不是“周末上补习班”☺

I'm going to spend the weekend on the beach to recharge my batteries.





## Food &amp; Cooking

## 饮食和做饭

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ It's important to have a <b>healthy and balanced diet</b> (健康的、均衡的饮食结构).</p>	<p>Many people have busy careers and <b>rely on</b> (依赖于……) <b>fast food</b> for their meals.</p>
<p>★ Fruit and vegetables are <b>rich in</b> (富含……) vitamin C and fiber (维生素 C 和纤维).</p> <p>📖 英文里说水果时还常会用到 <b>juicy</b> (多汁的) 这个词, “很有营养的” 则是 <b>very nutritious</b></p>	<p>★ Eating too much fast food <b>damages children's health</b> (破坏儿童的健康).</p>
<p>Seafood is high in <b>protein</b> (蛋白质) and low in <b>fat</b> (脂肪).</p>	<p>Fast food contains (含有) too much <b>fat</b>, <b>salt</b> (盐) or <b>sugar</b> (糖).</p>
<p>I like to start my day with a <b>hearty</b> (丰盛的) breakfast.</p>	<p>I often <b>skip</b> (不吃, “跳过去”) breakfast.</p>
<p>I always try to <b>eat three square meals</b> (吃好三餐, 每顿饭都“不对付”) a day.</p>	<p>I'm often too busy to cook.</p>
<p>People <b>eat out</b> to <b>socialise</b> (社交).</p> <p>◆ <b>eat out</b> 在餐馆儿吃, “在外面吃”</p>	<p><b>Eating out</b> is more expensive than eating at home.</p>
<p>Some restaurants provide a <b>relaxing and comfortable</b> atmosphere, while others are <b>overcrowded and noisy</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>relaxing and comfortable</b> 轻松舒适的, <b>overcrowded and noisy</b> 过于拥挤而且很吵闹的</p>	
<p>The food at this restaurant is very <b>well-priced</b>.</p> <p>◆ native speakers 经常用 <b>well-priced</b> 来形容餐馆的食品 “定价合理的”</p>	<p>Restaurant food tends to be <b>unhealthy</b> (不健康的).</p> <p>◆ <b>high-fat food</b> 高脂肪的食品, <b>high-salt food</b> 高含盐量的食品</p>



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Restaurants provide <b>a wide variety of</b> (多种多样的) food.	Good restaurants <b>are always packed</b> (总是挤满了人).
★ <b>Locally-produced food</b> (本地生产的食品) is <b>more nutritious</b> and tastes better. ◆ <b>more nutritious</b> 更有营养的	These days, food is often <b>transported</b> (运输) over long distances.
<b>Organic food</b> (有机食品) is produced without <b>chemicals</b> (化学药品).	Organic food is expensive.
<b>Genetically-modified crops</b> (转基因的庄稼) grow faster. ⚠ 如果觉得太长, 就说 <b>GM crops</b> 也同样地道	Many people <b>don't trust</b> (不信任) GM food.
★ GM food looks <b>more attractive</b> (更吸引人的).	GM food could <b>damage our health</b> (有可能破坏健康). ⚠ 提出假设时, could 语气比 can 更客气

## Food & Cooking 饮食和做饭

### Cooking 做饭

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Cooking is an important <b>life skill</b> (生活技能).	Many parents don't know how to <b>cook healthy meals</b> .
★ Teaching children cooking skills can <b>make them more independent</b> (让他们更加独立).	Cooking can be <b>risky</b> (有风险的) for young children.



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Children who can cook tend to <b>eat less junk food</b> (比较少吃垃圾食品).	Many children <b>are addicted to</b> (对……上瘾) junk food.
Cookery classes are <b>fun and helpful</b> (有趣而且有帮助的). ◆ <b>cookery classes / cookery courses</b> 厨艺课	Parents can teach their children how to cook <b>for free</b> (免费地).
Food is always <b>beautifully cooked</b> on <b>cookery shows</b> (厨艺节目). 🗣️ ★ <b>It's almost like an art form.</b> 简直就像是一种艺术形式。	I don't really follow the <b>cooking tips</b> from <b>TV chefs</b> . ◆ <b>tips</b> 小窍门, “小贴士”, <b>TV chefs</b> 厨艺节目里面的“大厨”, 请注意 <b>chef</b> 的正确读音是 /ʃef/ ✓, 而不是 /tʃef/ ✗

## Pat 指南



- ☆ **rely too much on...** “过度依赖……”是口试里一个很有用的短语, 例如 **rely too much on fast food** 和 **rely too much on mobile phones**
- ☆ 白面包是 **white bread**, 全麦面包是 **whole-wheat bread**, 虽然不太好吃, 但是更有营养 (more nutritious)
- ☆ **recipe** 是指一个菜的做法:  
Many people have secret **recipes** that they don't share with others.
- ☆ **ingredients** 是指做菜的“原料”  
Fresh **ingredients** make meals healthier.
- ☆ native speakers 常用下面这三种说法来形容食物“好吃的”, 它们的语气依次增强:  
**tasty** (味道不错的) < **delicious** (非常好吃的) < **out of this world** (已经不是一般人类所能吃到的了), 您现在应该明白为什么英语里最常用的是 **delicious** 了 😊





## Colours &amp; Numbers

## 颜色和数字

Colours can **affect our mood** (影响我们的情绪).

★ **Bright colours** (鲜艳的颜色), such as orange and red, make me feel **energetic** (很有活力的).

★ **Dark colours** (比较暗的颜色), such as purple and brown, make me feel **calm and peaceful** (平静安详的).

**Soft colours** (柔和的颜色), like cream (淡黄色) and grey (灰色), look **elegant** (优雅的) and **classy** (很有品位的, 很有“格调”的, 在地道英文里这个形容词跟上课无关).

## Pat 指南



☆ 有3种颜色国内同学们很少会说起, 但是却经常被 native speakers 提到: 一个是 **navy blue** (海军蓝), 另一个是 **maroon** (一种比较暗的红色, 您肯定听说过 Maroon 5, 其实那个乐队现在已经不止5个人了), 第三个是 **lilac** (淡紫色, 在国外有不少喜欢美术的女生喜欢)

## Colours &amp; Numbers 颜色和数字

## Numbers &amp; Maths 数字和数学

We think of 6, 8 and 9 as lucky numbers. They sound **similar to** (相似的) some **Chinese characters** (中文字, 汉字) with **positive meanings** (积极的含义).

★ My lucky number is... It's the day I was born on. ☺

Long numbers are difficult to remember.

I try to **think of a sentence** (想出一个句子) that sounds **similar to** the number. That can help me remember the number.



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Maths skills can help children better <b>manage</b> (管理) their time and money.	Many children <b>find maths difficult</b> (感到数学很难).
★ Maths skills can help children <b>better understand</b> the world around them.	They think maths is boring. ◆ <b>think in a more logical way</b> (更有逻辑地思考)
Getting <b>good grades</b> (好成绩) in maths can help children <b>build self-confidence</b> (树立自信心).	★ Learning maths <b>takes a lot of practice</b> (需要很多的练习).



## Parks, Plants, Animals & Birds

## 公园, 植物, 动物, 鸟类

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
★ Parks are <b>quiet and peaceful</b> (宁静安详的).	Some parks are <b>noisy and overcrowded</b> (喧闹而且过于拥挤的) at weekends. 🇬🇧 英国人更常说 <b>at weekends</b> , 美国人则更常说 <b>on weekends</b>
★ Parks help us <b>reduce stress</b> (减轻压力).	There are not enough parks in this city.
This park is a good place to <b>hang out</b> (休闲放松) <b>with friends</b> and <b>meet new people</b> .	🇬🇧 地道英文里的 <b>new people</b> 跟“刚结婚”没关系, 而是指“以前不认识的人, 新认识的人”
★ Parks help children <b>learn about nature</b> (了解大自然).	Some parks are not safe at night.



FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
This park is a great place for <b>having a picnic</b> (野餐) or a relaxing walk.	The picnic tables are <b>worn-out</b> (破旧的).
★ We can <b>get away from busy city life</b> (摆脱繁忙的都市生活) and relax for a couple of hours.	Big cities are <b>concrete jungles</b> . 🗣️ 中文里经常把大城市叫作“钢筋水泥的丛林”，英文里则把大城市叫作 <b>concrete jungles</b> “混凝土的丛林”，有空的时候您不妨听听 Alicia Keys 版的 <i>Empire State of Mind</i> 来感受一下纽约的“混凝土丛林” 😊
We can <b>enjoy the sun and fresh air</b> (新鲜的空气).	The park <b>equipment</b> (设备) is old and some <b>has been damaged</b> (被破坏了). ♦ <b>equipment</b> 不能加 s
Cities need more <b>green space</b> (绿化空间).	Very few people are interested in <b>planting trees</b> (种树, 植树).
<b>Neighbourhood parks</b> (居民区里的公园) help people develop <b>a sense of community</b> . ♦ <b>a sense of community</b> 社区感, 社区凝聚力	Many neighbourhood parks <b>lack funding</b> (缺乏资金).
I like to <b>watch the plants grow</b> . 🗣️ 英美人谈论自己的 garden 时经常这么说	I have to <b>water the plants</b> (给植物浇水) by myself.

Pat 指南



☆ native speakers 谈到自己喜欢的公园或花园时特别爱说的一句话是 This park / garden is an oasis from city life. oasis 的意思是“绿洲”，请注意听音频里的正确读音



☆ 公园里面常见的景物有 **flowerbeds** (花坛), **lawns** (绿地), **fountains** (喷泉), **benches** (长椅), **sculptures** (雕塑), **gazebos** (亭子), **paths** (公园里的小路), 以及小朋友们玩的 **swings** (秋千), **slides** (滑梯), **see-saws** (跷跷板) 等

☆ 如果说公园里“点缀着”一些池塘和湖泊, 地道英文会说 The park **is dotted with** ponds and lakes.

## Parks, Plants, Animals & Birds 公园, 植物, 动物, 鸟类

### Plants 植物

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
Trees <b>produce oxygen</b> (制造氧气) and <b>absorb carbon dioxide</b> (吸收二氧化碳).	<b>Global warming</b> (全球变暖) is a very serious problem.
★ Trees can help to <b>reduce pollution</b> (减少污染) and <b>clean the air</b> (净化空气).	There are more cars on the road, which means more <b>car fumes</b> (汽车尾气) in the air.
★ They <b>provide shade</b> (提供树荫) in the summer.	There are not enough trees in this city.
Trees are <b>the main source of</b> (主要的来源) wood and <b>contribute to the economy</b> (为经济做贡献).	Millions of trees are <b>cut down</b> each year.
★ Trees make streets <b>more attractive</b> .	Very few people are interested in <b>planting trees</b> (植树) in their <b>neighbourhood</b> (居民区).



### 花的作用

★ Many plants **bloom** (开花) in the spring.

★ We can enjoy the colours and **fragrance** (香气) of the flowers.

Many people like to **decorate** (装饰) their **living room** (客厅) with **fresh flowers** (鲜花).

Fresh flowers are more expensive than **plastic flowers** (塑料花) or **silk flowers** (丝花).

Fresh flowers are beautiful.

They **don't last long** (不耐用).

★ Flowers are **simple but thoughtful** (简单但是很“贴心”的) gifts. ★ They can help us **express our feelings** (表达我们的情感).

Flowers can help to **cheer up patients** (帮助病人振作起来).

◆ native speakers 把送给病人的花叫作 **get-well flowers**

### 一些花的象征意义

❖ The **lotus** (莲花) is a symbol of **purity** (纯洁).

◆ **is a symbol of...** 是……的象征

❖ The red rose (红玫瑰) is a symbol of **romantic love**.

❖ The carnation (康乃馨) **means** love and respect.

❖ The peony (牡丹花) **represents** (象征着) wealth and prosperity (财富和兴旺).

❖ The plum flower (梅花) represents **hard work and courage** (勤奋和勇气).

#### Pat 指南



☆ 您还可以在 p. 182 页看到很多好记又好说的植物名称



Parks, Plants, Animals & Birds 公园, 植物, 动物, 鸟类

## Animals & Birds 动物和鸟类

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
I like to hear birds <b>chirping</b> (鸟叫) in the morning.	<b>Wild</b> (野生的) animals are leaving this area because of <b>noise and pollution</b> .
Birds are an important part of the <b>ecosystem</b> (生态系统). ◆ <b>wild species</b> 野生物种, <b>endangered species</b> 濒危物种	Not all wild species <b>are protected by law</b> . ◆ <b>are protected by law</b> 受到法律的保护
<b>There used to be</b> (过去曾经有) a wide variety of wild animals and birds living in this area. ◆ <b>protect biodiversity</b> 保护生物的多样性	★ Now their <b>habitats</b> are being polluted and destroyed. ◆ <b>habitat</b> 栖息地
Governments should <b>spend more money on</b> the protection of wild species.	Many wildlife reserves <b>lack funding</b> (缺乏资金). ◆ <b>wildlife reserves</b> 野生动植物保护区, <b>nature reserves</b> 自然保护区
Some birds have <b>gorgeous feathers</b> (非常漂亮的羽毛).	Some birds <b>look plain</b> (看起来平淡无奇的).
Some people tend to believe seeing a <b>magpie</b> (喜鹊) brings good luck.	Some people believe seeing a <b>crow</b> (乌鸦) brings bad luck. ◆ That's just an old <b>superstition</b> (迷信).
★ Pets can help to <b>reduce loneliness</b> (减少孤独感).	Some pets make a lot of <b>noise</b> .
★ Pets can help children develop <b>a sense of responsibility</b> (责任感).	Some pet owners (宠物的主人) are not <b>responsible owners</b> . They don't take good care of their pets.

### Pat 指南



☆ native speakers 描述小朋友或者小动物可爱的时候除了用 cute 之外, 还经常会用短语 **cute and adorable** 来说明“可耐”的程度 ☺





## Celebration & Rest

## 节日，聚会，礼物，跳舞和睡眠

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Celebrating festivals is <b>fun and enjoyable</b> (有趣而且令人心情愉快的).</p>	<p>Festivals are noisy, but that's part of the fun.</p>
<p>★ Festivals <b>contribute a lot to the economy</b> (为经济做出很大的贡献).</p>	<p>Celebrating festivals can be expensive.</p>
<p>Festivals help to <b>strengthen family ties</b> (增进亲情).</p>	<p>More and more people choose to <b>live alone</b>.</p>
<p>★ Family members <b>get together</b> (聚在一起) and <b>share the joy</b> (分享喜悦).</p> <p>◆ <b>catch up on each other's life</b> 聊彼此的近况</p>	<p>Trains are <b>overcrowded</b> (过于拥挤的), with many <b>passengers</b> (乘客) standing.</p>
<p>Traditional festivals are an important part of our <b>cultural heritage</b> (文化遗产).</p> <p>◆ heritage 不能加 s</p>	<p>Many young people think Western festivals, like <b>Christmas</b> (圣诞节) and <b>Valentine's Day</b> (情人节), are more <b>fun and exciting</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>Thanksgiving Day</b> 感恩节, <b>give thanks for what we have</b> 对我们所拥有的表示感谢</p>
<p>★ Traditional festivals help children <b>better understand</b> (更好地理解) their culture.</p>	<p>Traditional festival food tends to be <b>delicious but unhealthy</b>.</p>
<p>On New Year's Eve, many people watch the <b>TV specials</b>.</p> <p>📺 这里 special 是名词“特别节目”的意思</p>	<p>“看焰火”叫作 <b>see the fireworks</b>, “放鞭炮”则叫 <b>set off firecrackers</b>, 给小朋友红包儿是 <b>give children red envelopes with money inside</b>。如果非要跟考官说“春晚”, 下面这个表达会让他/她听得很舒服, 尽管你自己会说得更累: <b>the TV gala broadcast on the eve of Chinese New Year</b></p>



## Pat 指南



☆ native speakers 在新年时特别重视的一件事情是 **make a New Year's resolution** (做新年决定), 通常是决定对自己以前有的某种不良生活方式做出重要的改变。不过, BBC 去年年底做的 survey 显示: 只有 8% 的人能真正坚持自己的新年决定 (Only 8 percent of people **stick to** their New Year's resolutions. ), 而高达 92% 的英国人其实都没实现自己在新年时决定的目标 (92 percent of people fail to **achieve** their New Year's resolutions. ) 😊

Celebration & Rest 节日, 聚会, 礼物, 跳舞和睡眠

## Parties 聚会

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Going to parties is a good way to <b>have fun with friends</b> and <b>meet new people</b> .</p> <p>◆ <b>catch up with old friends</b> 和老朋友“叙旧”, <b>make new friends</b> 结识新朋友</p>	<p>Some parties are too <b>noisy</b> .</p> <p>◆ <b>play party games</b> 聚会的时候玩游戏</p>
<p>★ People <b>socialise</b> (社交) at parties.</p> <p>🌐 英文里把只要一听说有 party 就必去的人叫作 <b>party animal</b></p>	<p>Some parties are too <b>wild</b> (疯狂的). Some people even <b>get drunk</b> (喝醉) and do crazy things.</p> <p>◆ I'm shy. I <b>don't feel comfortable</b> (感到很不自在) at parties.</p>
<p>Most of my friends are very <b>sociable</b> (很外向的, 喜欢社交的).</p>	<p>My parents are too <b>strict</b> (过于严厉的). We don't <b>communicate</b> well.</p>

## Pat 指南



☆ **The more, the merrier.** (人越多越好玩儿) 是在英美生活里说准备开 party 时一句



很常用的话，而 **We had a blast!** (玩得非常开心!) 则是开完了 party 之后人们常说的一句话

☆ party 的另一个作用是 **celebrate special occasions** (庆祝特殊的场合)，比如 a friend's birthday, the beginning of a new year, wedding 等

## Celebration & Rest 节日，聚会，礼物，跳舞和睡眠 假期 Holidays

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
<p>★ Holidays help us <b>take a break</b>, <b>have a good rest</b> (充分地休息) and <b>recharge our batteries</b> (让疲劳的身心恢复良好的状态).</p>	<p>Most shops are <b>overcrowded</b> (过于拥挤的) on public holidays.</p> <p>但英美的大多数商店在公共假期时却会关门 (Most shops are closed on public holidays.)</p>
<p>Many people <b>go abroad</b> on holidays.</p>	<p><b>Travelling abroad</b> is expensive and can be <b>challenging</b> (有挑战的).</p> <p>◆ <b>overcome the language barrier</b> 克服语言障碍</p>

### Pat 指南



☆ 每到假期，很多 native speakers 爱说的两句话是：**I use holidays to catch up on sleep** (我用假期追回睡眠，也就是中文说的“补觉”☺)，和 **I can recharge my batteries** (“给身心充电”，让身心恢复良好的状态)。

☆ 中国的 public holidays (公共假期) 的英文说法：

**the New Year holiday**, **the Spring Festival holiday** (也可以说 **the Lunar New Year holiday**), **the Qingming Festival holiday** (也可以说 **the Tomb Sweeping Day holiday**), **the Labour Day holiday**, **the Duanwu Festival holiday** (也可以叫 **the Dragon Boat Festival holiday**), **the Mid-Autumn Festival holiday**, **the National Day holiday**



Celebration & Rest 节日，聚会，礼物，跳舞和睡眠

## Birthdays 生日

My birthday **reminds me** (提醒我) of how much my parents **love and support** me.

★ Celebrating my birthday with friends **makes me feel special**.

◆ **light the candles on the cake** 点生日蜡烛, **sing “Happy Birthday”** 唱“祝你生日快乐”, **make a wish** 许愿, **blow out the candles** 吹蜡烛, **cut the cake** 切蛋糕, **open the gifts** 开礼物

I really **appreciate** how much my friends **care about** me.

★ They give me **thoughtful gifts** (“贴心”的礼物), like my favourite **snacks**, books or **gift cards** (礼品卡) for my favourite shops.

I particularly like the **gifts hand-made by my friends** (我的朋友们亲手制作的礼物).

Every birthday is **a fresh start** (全新的开始).

🌀 也可以说 **a new beginning**

We can have **new dreams** (新的梦想) and **new goals** (新的目标).

We'll try to do things better and **achieve** more.

★ The 18th birthday is very important because it's when a young person is considered to **become an adult** (成年人).

### Pat 指南



☆ 在生日聚会上, native speakers 常用 **the birthday boy / the birthday girl** 来称呼过生日的男孩/女孩

☆ “唱卡拉 OK” 的英文就叫 **sing karaoke**, 请认真听音频 (英语里的日文词最后一个字母 e 通常都是要发音的)



Celebration & Rest 节日，聚会，礼物，跳舞和睡眠

## Gifts 礼物

<p>★ My friends and I <b>exchange gifts</b> (交换礼物) on New Year's Day.</p>	<p>Exchanging gifts is a good way to celebrate <b>special occasions</b>.</p>
<p>I <b>spend a lot of time</b> choosing <b>the right gift</b> for my friends' birthday.</p> <p>◆ <b>thoughtful gifts</b> “贴心”的礼物</p>	<p>★ Giving friends gifts shows that we really <b>care about</b> them.</p>
<p>On Chinese New Year, children receive gifts and <b>red envelopes with money inside</b> (红包).</p>	<p>On Valentine's Day, lovers give each other romantic gifts, like flowers, <b>chocolate</b> or <b>jewellery</b> (首饰), to <b>express their feelings</b> (表达他们的情感).</p>
<p>Some people give their friends <b>expensive gifts</b>, like <b>mobile phones</b> or <b>tablets</b> (平板电脑).</p>	<p>Some people give their boss expensive gifts to develop <b>guanxi</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>guanxi</b> 其实已经是地道的英文词了，而且还形成了一个短语 <b>develop guanxi</b>，也就是“搞关系”，请听音频里这个词的“正确发音” 😊</p>
<p>★ <b>Hand-made gifts</b> are <b>more creative</b> (更有创意的) and <b>more memorable</b> (给人印象更深的).</p>	<p>★ <b>It's the thought that counts.</b></p> <p>🗣️ 这是 native speakers 说礼物时最常用的句子之一：真正重要的是心意。</p>

英文里常说挑选礼物时 3 个最重要的考虑因素是：**the occasion** (场合)，**the person's interests and hobbies** (对方的兴趣爱好) 以及 **your budget** (你的预算)



Celebration & Rest 节日，聚会，礼物，跳舞和睡眠

Dancing 跳舞

<p>★ Dancing is a good way to <b>socialise</b> (社交).</p> <p>◆ <b>go to a dance</b> 参加舞会</p>	<p><b>I have two left feet</b>, so I can't dance well.</p> <p>◆ native speakers 说自己不擅长跳舞时会用“我长了两只左脚”这句话给自己解围 (make it less embarrassing)</p>
<p>★ Dancing is a good way to <b>keep fit</b>.</p> <p>◆ <b>a good form of exercise</b> 很好的锻炼形式</p>	<p>Learning to dance well <b>takes time and energy</b> (需要时间和精力).</p>
<p>The <b>moves</b> (动作) and <b>steps</b> (舞步) of traditional dances are more <b>complicated</b> (复杂的). They take a lot of practice to learn.</p> <p>◆ <b>traditional dances</b> 传统舞蹈，比如 <b>tango</b> (探戈)</p>	<p>The moves and steps of modern dances are more <b>fun and creative</b>. They are a good way to <b>express ourselves</b> (表达自己).</p> <p>◆ <b>modern dances</b> 现代舞蹈，比如 <b>hip-hop dance</b> (嘻哈舞)</p>
<p><b>Ballet</b> (芭蕾舞) is an <b>elegant</b> (优雅的) dance style.</p>	<p>I like to dance to <b>energetic</b> (很有活力的) music.</p> <p>◆ <b>dance to traditional music</b> 随着传统的音乐跳舞</p>

Pat 指南



- ☆ 国内的一些中年女士 (middle-aged ladies) “跳广场舞”的英文叫 **practise their Square Dance routine**
- ☆ PSY 的江南 Style (Gangnam Style) 虽然能让人上瘾 (very addictive), 但说舞蹈时您就别再说“骑马舞” (horse-riding dance) 了 ☺



Celebration & Rest 节日，聚会，礼物，跳舞和睡眠

## Sleeping Habits 睡眠习惯

FOR (正方)	AGAINST (反方)
I always try to <b>keep a regular sleep schedule</b> (保持有规律的作息时间).	★ If I <b>stay up late</b> (很晚才睡), then I feel tired and <b>find it hard to concentrate</b> (很难集中注意力) the next morning.
★ A good night's sleep (好好地睡一晚) makes me <b>feel fresh and energetic</b> (感觉很有活力).	Lack of sleep <b>increases the risk of heart disease and high blood pressure</b> (导致患心脏病和高血压的风险上升).
★ Getting enough sleep helps me <b>reduce stress</b> (减轻压力) and can really <b>boost my efficiency</b> (提高我的效率).	Lack of sleep makes people <b>feel stressed</b> (感觉压力很大).
Listening to some <b>relaxing music</b> , taking a <b>hot shower</b> (洗个热水澡) and doing some <b>light exercise</b> (做轻度的锻炼) can all help me get a good night's sleep.	I often play video games before going to bed.

### Pat 指南



- ☆ native speakers 把一个爱早起的人叫作 **an early bird**，而把一个喜欢晚睡，越晚越精神的人称为 **a night owl**。有趣的是：这个短语和中文里说的“夜猫子”正好是 100% 的契合度 ☺

★ ★ ★

对于备考时间有限的同学来说，先集中准备好本次考试最可能出现的题目仍然是您的首要任务 (your priority)。您可以在 Pat 博客 [blog.sina.com.cn/ieltsguru](http://blog.sina.com.cn/ieltsguru) 上看到本月口语预测的 Part 1 考题，同时结合我们在 Day 2, Day 7 和《IELTS 口语高频词汇 & 短语速查手册》里 Chapter 1 和 Chapter 3 讲解的语言点来进行高效的准备。



# Day



## Part 2:

清晰度 > 难度

*Clear and Natural*

Pat's Guide  
To The IELTS Speaking Test

---

Words and phrases are the natural means  
of expressing thoughts  
and establishing understanding between people.



## IELTS □ 试 Part 2 真题库索引

- A** 建筑话题 / p. 130
- B** 个人和组织话题 / p. 154
- C** 自然界话题 / p. 174
- D** 休闲娱乐活动话题 / p. 191
- E** 物品话题 / p. 233
- F** 经历和事件话题 / p. 257



## 口语 Part 2 话题指南

### A

宾馆 / 134  
购物中心 / 137  
理想的住处 / 142  
喜欢的房间 / 145  
老建筑 / 149  
有水的地方 / 132 & 176  
游泳的地方 / 132  
靠近水的地方 / 178  
图书馆 / 151  
美术馆 / 147  
音乐厅 / 309  
建筑师 / 153  
小商店 / 127  
餐馆 / 139

### B

运动员 / 159 & 161  
健身俱乐部 / 160  
成功的小生意 / 139  
大公司 / 141  
音乐人 / 162  
乐队 / 164  
艺术家 / 165  
有创意的人 / 153, 162 & 168  
企业家 / 166  
领导人物 / 166  
家庭成员 / 169 & 172

教师 / 169  
帮助你学习的人 / 169  
影响你的人 / 308  
学校的规定 / 129  
理想的工作 / 171  
老人 / 172 & 309  
孩子 / 172

### C

公园 / 179  
花园 / 181  
安静的地方 / 146, 149, 151 & 181  
散步 / 176 & 181  
旅行 / 176  
野生动物 / 183 & 185  
宠物 / 186  
植物 / 188

### D

童年游戏 / 193  
有趣的新闻 / 197  
电视节目 / 199 & 202  
广播节目 / 201  
问答节目 / 201  
才艺节目 / 202  
电视系列剧 / 203 & 206  
电影 / 208, 210 & 213  
喜欢的歌曲 / 215  
广告 / 217



童年故事 / 225

爱读的书 / 168

喜欢的网站 / 222

喜欢的应用 / 219

外国文化 / 227

喜欢的运动 / 195

极限运动 / 196

艺术品 / 230

历史事件 / 284

好的法律 / 289

## E

汽车 / 234 & 237

电子产品 / 240 & 243

贵重的东西 / 240 & 243

照片 / 245

重要的信 / 248

手工制作 / 248

礼物 / 243 & 248

玩具 / 251

服装 / 252

首饰 / 254

重要的发明 / 255

## F

开心的事 / 258 & 267

别人祝贺你的事 / 258 & 267

体育事件 / 264

体育赛事 / 267

有趣的科学课 / 270

成功完成的事 / 126 & 267

演讲 / 269

表演 / 273

听音乐的场合 / 273

获得免费物品的场合 / 201

婚礼 / 278

节日 / 282

需要早到的场合 / 258

一个积极的变化 / 291

迟到的经历 / 287

交通堵塞 / 287

去拥挤的地方的经历 / 273

购物经历 / 260

不能用手机的场合 / 258

听到噪音的经历 / 262

让你气愤的事 / 260 & 262

必须耐心等待的经历 / 260

第一次品尝某种食品 / 285

野餐 / 189

特殊的饭 / 189

特殊的蛋糕 / 281

吃外国食品的经历 / 285

聚会 / 276

生日 / 276

对于考试当月最新出现的话题，您还可以在 Pat 的博客 [blog.sina.com.cn/ielts guru](http://blog.sina.com.cn/ielts guru) 的本月口语预测里看到。



## 在 Part 2 的一分钟思考时间里你应该做的事

好消息是：在 Part 2 考官将会给你纸和笔（如果他/她居然很不敬业地忘了，请你说 Could I have a pen and a sheet of paper?），在 1 分钟思考时间里，考官是允许你在纸上写 notes 的。

☆ 卡片题务必注意时态，如果说过去的内容，一定一定要记得用过去时。

如果题目确实要求描述过去的事件或者经历，在思考的一分钟里你可以在纸上写上 -ed 这个符号来提示自己，以确保描述时不会忘记时态。

☆ 名词的复数和谓语动词的单数一定不能忘记加-s。

你也可以在纸上写一个“大 S”来提示自己不要说错单复数。

☆ 在纸上记录你想到的 ideas 和 key words 时，字可以写得大一些。

在这方面考官完全管不着你，但是如果你在描述时因为看不清自己在纸上写的 ideas 和 key words 而一再地停下来，把口语考试变成了“阅读考试”，就很可能影响你的流利度得分。



## 作为 native speaker，考官喜欢什么样的答案？

对于多数中国考生来说，口语卡片题是 IELTS 口试里无比“凶险”的一关，因为 Part 2 是“独白”，一旦开始描述，全程都要自己说，而且还必须面向考官，不能扭着脸儿说。

让问题变得更复杂的是：中国考生和 IELTS 考官对于 Part 2 答案的“审美观”也是不同的。考生往往希望用高难度的单词和长句把自己的答案变成有震撼力的“大杀器”，却并不重视怎样能把话题真正描述清楚。但考官作为 native speakers，却更看重描述 (description) 的**清晰度**。所以，当考官听完考生“趴吐”之后对于描述的对象往往仍然是“一头雾水”。



IELTS 考官们真正希望听到的 Part 2 答案到底有多难？我们来看看由主办方 British Council 提供的高分答案实例就明白了：

Describe a time when you had to work very hard to achieve a goal.

You should say:

what the goal was

when this happened

what you did to achieve the goal

and talk about why the goal was important to you.

British Council 提供的真实高分答案官方范例：

One of my recent goals was to go on a 4-day walk in the mountains in the South Island.

It's a famous walk in my country, a beautiful walk around some bays by the ocean. We planned to stay at hotels each night, so it was going to be a great holiday for my husband and me. But I needed to **get fit** to enjoy it.

I did lots of **exercise and training to prepare for this goal**. When I started, I knew I needed to get fitter, so I did a lot of walking. At first, the 8 km circle route near my house was really hard for me. It took about 2 hours. But in the end, I could do it easily.

I also went for longer walks with my husband on weekends. We used to walk to the Botanical Garden, which was a long way. But we got to have lunch in a café. That **was fun**, and I found that I **had more energy** as I got fitter. But then my feet and legs started to hurt, so I went to swimming classes three times a week. I had to **get up** at 6 am, but it was worth it, and it really **improved my balance**.

This goal was important to me because I really wanted to go on this holiday with my husband. Reaching it also gave me a great **sense of achievement**. I was **very proud of myself**. And of course I was fitter by the end of the training.



没有“卖弄”的痕迹，也毫无“炫技”的影子，除了少数略有难度的词汇和短语之外，90%的用词都是同学们几乎不屑一用的“基础词汇”。但是这位考生确实得到了British Council给出的高分，原因很简单：因为她的描述（description）清晰、扣题、自然。

事实上，你在口语 Part 2 里需要做的既不是安于“眼前的苟且”，也不是追求“诗和远方”，speaking examiner 在 Part 2 里真正希望听到你说的是：

- 01 **一个清晰的答案**，也就是通过你的英语描述考官可以比较容易地听明白你描述的人物、事物或者事件是“什么样儿的”；
- 02 **一个扣题的答案**，也就是你应该积极地参考卡片上面列出的四个提示问题（cue questions），同时你还可以在四个提示里面选择1~2个自己“最有感觉”的提示重点展开，还适当给出合理的**细节**（例如：上面这个British Council给出的官方实例选择了对第1个和第2个提示问题只是简要地一带而过，而对第3个和第4个提示问题进行深入的展开，还适当给出了合理的细节）。Pat 将会为您列出的 Mind Maps（思维导图）也是 native speakers 进行描述（description）的时候确保扣题、充实的常用工具；
- 03 **一个自然的答案**，你可以在考前针对每类话题准备一些相关词汇和短语，但请牢记：只有你能够**自然地**说出来的词汇和短语才是真正适合你自己的，会让你“卡壳儿”的难词在考场实战里只会成为你的负担。

我们再来看一个 Cambridge English Language Assessment 的官方卡片题实例：

Describe a shop near where you live that you sometimes use.

You should say:

where it is

what the shop looks like

what sorts of product or service it sells

and explain why you use this shop.



高分答案实例:

I'm going to describe a convenience store in my neighbourhood.

The store is on the south side of an old brick building. The store has large windows, and there's a sign with the name of the store, Kevin's Convenience, on top of the front entrance. There're three **parking spots** at the front of the store.

The store is small, but it offers **a wide variety** of goods, from snacks to magazines to birthday cards. It even has some stuff that I can't find in bigger stores, like baked sweet potatoes.

The owners of this store are a middle-aged couple. The store is **small but tidy**, with **friendly and helpful** employees. The shelves are always clean and **well organised**, and the prices are quite **reasonable**.

I often buy things from this store because it's just a 2-minute walk from my flat, so it's **really convenient** to get to. I often shop there also because it's open 24 hours a day, **all year round**, and the service is always good.

这个高分实例同样也很简单，但是它清晰、扣题、自然，并且有适度的细节，完全体现了主办方对于 Part 2 高分答案的真实要求。

我们再来看一个被很多考生认为“变态”的卡片题是不是也可以有“不变态”的高分答案:

Describe a rule in your school ( that you agree or disagree with ).

You should say:

what the rule was

whether you followed it

whether your classmates followed it

and explain why you think it was good ( or bad ).



学校规定？这道题让很多“烤鸭”还没出国就已经明显感到了国外和国内教育的不同：国内考试通常并不鼓励考生对学校教育“吐槽”，如果“吐”得太狠还可能遭遇高考作文零分之类的重罚。可这道卡片题却明明白白地告诉你：不管是赞同的还是反对的，只要是一条学校的规定你就可以放心地说。

高分答案实例：

I'm going to talk about the "hands-up" rule in the high school I attended. We were asked to put our hands up in class to answer questions.

I always followed this rule. But sometimes when I was chosen by the teacher to answer a question, I couldn't remember what I wanted to say. That was a bit embarrassing.

This rule made us feel we could make our own choice to answer a question or not. And we were encouraged to put our ideas forward in a polite way instead of talking over each other. We put up our hands only when we had an answer ready, so the rule also helped us build confidence.

But some of my classmates were too shy to put up their hands. They were afraid they would get the answer wrong and get laughed at. And some teachers picked the same people too often.

Anyway, I think this rule was good. Without it, we would have just shouted out our answers and ended up learning nothing at all.

显然，虽然话题比较“变态”，但考官还是更愿意接受一个“不变态”、清晰、自然，并且有适度细节的答案。

### Test Tip

本章的真题请您充分结合 Pat 在博客里贴出的预测题来准备，提前想一想每个话题的思路、关键词和短语即可，而且同类话题的答案完全可以自然合并（p. 28），在考前把所有卡片题库全都看一遍既没有可能、也没有必要。



## A 建筑

## Pat 解题

建筑师 (architects) 在西方社会里的地位从历史上到今天一直是比较高的, 比如 Frank Gehry 就是其中的一个, 右边这张照片是 Pat 在著名的 MIT 校园拍摄的 Frank Gehry 作品, 感觉够另类 (funky) 的吧?



关于 建筑, 有两个单词中国同学们经常会用混: building 和 architecture。building 是可数名词, 指的是一栋一栋的房子, 而 architecture 是不可数名词, 它其实是一个地区或者一种风格的所有建筑的总称, 而并不是特指一栋具体的房子。

关于 城市, 也有两个词经常被中国同学们用混, 即 city 和 urban。其实 urban 不是名词“城市”, 而是形容词“城市的”, 如果想用 urban 表示城市, 就一定要说 the urban area。

## 本类话题最有代表性的真题 Typical Topics

- ✳ Describe an old building.
- ✳ Describe a house you like.
- ✳ Describe a place that makes you feel relaxed.
- ✳ Describe a tourist attraction.
- ✳ Describe an educational trip.



## 展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Maps

(如果卡片上的 4 个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案，那么下面的思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)



您无需记忆 Part 2 的任何一个答案，但你应该认真思考高分答案是怎样用简单、自然的英文进行扣题、清晰的描述 (description)，并适当给出细节的。请坚信：练出扣题、清晰的描述能力其实要比机械记忆答案更容易、也更有意义。



## 分级演示 Sample Answers

### ☆ 一个有水的地方

#### Pat 指南



我们在本节里都是讨论人工的地方，如果您想描述自然界里有水的地方，还可以参考 C 类话题里的第 1, 2 题。

Describe a place where there is water.

You should say:

where the place is

when people go there

what people do there

and explain whether you like this place or not.



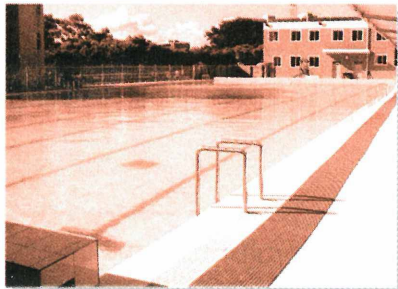
难度指数：★★★★☆☆

#### Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about our community swimming pool. It's located behind our **community center**. The pool is not very big, but is **clean and well-managed**.

Lots of people go there on hot summer days. Some people just go there to **hang out** and **cool off**. Others go there to exercise and get in shape. Those who're good at swimming tend to stay in **the deep end**.

**The shallow end** is often **packed with** children who just **splash water around** and have fun. Sometimes there're also **instructors** giving them swimming lessons. Enjoying the sun and getting



※ 扫描二维码就可以听到本节的原音朗读，您还可以使用本书附赠的音频卡听到更多章节的录音



paid is a pretty good deal, huh?

I usually go to the pool **a couple of times** a week in the summer. Swimming is a really good way to **relax** and **keep fit** at the same time. And it's always fun to meet and **chat with** other people who also enjoy swimming. I've made lots of new friends there.

And... I don't have a girlfriend (for girls: boyfriend). So who knows? Maybe I could meet someone special there.

加分词汇和短语的作用只是“**点缀**”你的答案，而不是“**充斥**”你的答案。在真实的 British Council 官方高分范例里面，多数内容其实都是用浅显易懂的词汇，也只有这样的描述 (description) 才能真正听起来**清晰**、**自然**。

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

社区中心	community center	管理得很好的	well-managed
休闲放松	hang out	感觉更凉爽，给身体“降温”	cool off
深水区	the deep end	浅水区	the shallow end
挤满了……	is packed with...	溅起水花儿	splash water around
游泳教练	swimming instructor	几次	a couple of times
保持体格强健	keep fit	聊天	chat

### 扩展词汇

减轻压力，“减压”	reduce stress	社交	socialise
减肥	lose weight	增强肌肉	build muscles
室外泳池	outdoor swimming pool	室内泳池	indoor swimming pool
温水	warm water	冷水	cold water
很清澈的	crystal-clear	泳道	lanes
泳镜	goggles	蛙泳	breast-stroke

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果您将会怎么说



仰泳 back-stroke      蝶泳 butterfly-stroke      自由泳 freestyle  
 热身运动 warm-up exercises      水性很好 swim like a fish  
 彻底不会游泳，“游得像砖头一样” swim like a brick  
 初学者 beginners      狗刨 doggy-paddle  
 救生员 lifeguard      男式游泳裤 swim trunks  
 女式游泳衣 swimsuit / bikini

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

此外，备考时间充裕的同学还可以从这个网站了解伦敦的 Aquatics Centre 是什么样的：[www.londonaquaticscentre.org](http://www.londonaquaticscentre.org)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

上面这个工具箱里的词都挺不错，但是也没必要全搬。可下面的这个词要是考到这个话题您还留着不用那就是“一不说成千古恨”的结果——spot。这个名词在英文口语里经常用来表示“地点”。例如：

[剑桥例句] This park looks like a nice spot for a picnic.

相应地，下次说到“有水的地方”，您就可以理直气壮地对考官说：It's a nice spot for swimming and playing water games.

## ☆ 一个现代建筑

### (A) 宾馆

Describe a hotel you stayed in or visited.

You should say:

where the hotel is located

when you stayed there

why you went there

and explain what you liked about it.





难度指数：★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

I stayed at the Yong-Fan Hotel while visiting my relatives in Shanghai last July.

It's located at the southeast corner of the city and is **well-known for** its guests. I was told many **celebrities** stayed there before, including Kris Wu and William Chan.



The hotel provides **comfort and convenience**. The room I stayed in was very **spacious**. The bed was nice and comfortable. The TV had many channels, and the **air conditioning** was quiet and easy to control.

The hotel has **a wide variety of** rooms, from single rooms equipped with **flat-screen TV** and fridge to **Presidential Suites** which are on the top floor. All rooms have **free Wi-Fi**.



The hotel employees were **friendly and helpful**, and the **room rates were very reasonable** for the area. I really enjoyed my stay there.

轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

► Tool Box

住宾馆 **stay at a hotel** (地道英文里“住宾馆”的动词不用 live)

因为……而著名 **is well-known for...** 名人 **celebrities**

吴亦凡 **Kris Wu** 陈伟霆 **William Chan**

舒适与方便 (名词短语) **comfort and convenience**

舒适方便的 (形容词短语) **comfortable and convenient**

宽敞的 **spacious** 空调 **air-conditioning**

多种多样的 **a wide variety of** 电冰箱 **fridge**

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说



平板电视 flat-screen TV

总统套房 Presidential Suite

免费无线上网 free Wi-Fi

员工 employees

员工 (统称) staff

宾馆的房价 room rates / room prices

合理的 reasonable



### 扩展词汇

豪华的 luxurious

舞厅 (不是“球房”) ballroom

很有品位的 classy

入口大厅, “大堂” lobby

装饰 decorations

(服务) 无可挑剔的 impeccable

咖啡机 coffee maker

恒温器 (英美建筑里调节温度用的常见设备) thermostat

标志性的建筑 landmark

外观 appearance

扶梯 escalators

口碑好 has a good reputation

它给人“宾至如归”的感觉 It's a home away from home. (地道英文里的固定说法)

位于 be located at... / be situated at...

客房服务员 room attendants

节能的 energy-efficient

布局合理的 well laid-out

时间充裕的同学还可以从这个网站了解英国的一个典型酒店里的客房到底是什么样儿的: [ihg.com/holidayinn/hotels/gb/en/london/lonuk/hoteldetail/hotel-room-rates](http://ihg.com/holidayinn/hotels/gb/en/london/lonuk/hoteldetail/hotel-room-rates)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

如果要用英语说“宾馆的服务设施”,基础不错的同学可能会想到 hotel facilities, 但在地道英文里还有个更地道的 hotel amenities 才是表达这个意思的最佳选择:

[剑桥例句] The hotel has a wide variety of amenities, such as a swimming pool, restaurants and a fitness center.



## (B) 购物中心

Describe a shopping center that you like.

You should say:

where it is

what it is like

how often you visit this shopping center

and explain why you like this shopping center.



难度指数: ★★★★★☆

### Pat 的答案

My favourite shopping center is Oriental Plaza. It's just **a short walk from** Tian'an Men Square.

The center is pretty big, and it's **wrapped in glass** on all sides.

**The inside** of the building is amazing: very **spacious**, clean and **well-organised** — not like many other **shopping centers** where you can easily get lost.

This shopping center is **a landmark** in Beijing, not just because of its size and location, but also because of the **enjoyable shopping experience** it provides.



My friends and I like this shopping center because it has **a wide variety of** shops, and all the stuff they sell is **good-quality** and **well-priced**. And the service is good too. The shop assistants are always **friendly and helpful**.

The center also has a large **food court**, with lots of food choices, from traditional food to Western food.



## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

从……走一小段路就到了 is just a short walk from...

(建筑的) 外表面都是玻璃的 is wrapped in glass

(建筑的) 内部 the inside / the interior

非常好的 amazing

宽敞的 spacious

井然有序的 well-organised

标志性建筑 landmark

令人愉快的购物体验 enjoyable shopping experience

优质的 good-quality

定价合理的 well-priced / reasonably-priced

售货员 shop assistants

友好的而且很有帮助的 friendly and helpful

购物中心的美食街 food court

多种多样的 a wide variety of

### 扩展词汇

位置极佳的 is well-located

巨大的 huge / enormous

……层高的建筑 a... - storey building

顶级的 top-notch

顾客 customers

问候某人 greet sb.

优惠券 coupon

电梯 lift (BrE) / elevator (AmE)

扶梯 escalators

灯光, 照明 lighting

壮观的 spectacular

装饰 decorations

很有品位的 classy

全额退款 full refund

口碑很好 has a good reputation

精品服饰店 boutiques

化妆品专柜 cosmetics section

打折, 促销 sales / special offers

花店 florist's shop

面包房 bakery

电影院 cinema (BrE) / movie theater (AmE)

美食街 food court

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



收据 receipt (这个单词里的字母 p 不发音) 总是挤满了人 is always packed  
建筑的内部布局很方便使用。 The layout of the building is easy to follow.

时间充裕的同学还可以在去英国之前就先逛逛伦敦著名的 Westfield ☺:  
[uk.westfield.com/london](http://uk.westfield.com/london)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

只是在店里“浏览商品”(但不见得买)的英文表达是: browse through the shops, 而如果只想在商场里随便逛逛放松一下, 甚至都不一定会看商品, 那就是 hang out in the shopping center 了。

## (C) 餐 馆

Describe a restaurant you like.

You should say:

where it is

what type of food it serves

who you go to the restaurant with

and explain why you like this restaurant.



### Pat 指南



英文里面有两句著名的谚语叫“Small is beautiful.”和“Less is more.”——“小就是美, 少即是多”, 我们来看看怎样用清晰、自然的英文描述一个小餐馆。

难度指数: ★★★★★☆

### Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a Chinese restaurant on Nan Hu Street. I'm a regular there.



The restaurant is easy to find because it's **next to** a hotel. It's quite small and **can only hold about 20 people**. But the tables **are neatly set** and the seats are comfortable. **The décor is simple but attractive** with some nice paintings on the wall.



I've taken lots of friends there. Their menu **has a wide variety of** Chinese food, from **shrimp dumplings** to **spring rolls** to **roasted ribs**, so there's something for everyone. The food is always **freshly prepared** and **tasty**. **The portions** are quite large, too.

I like this restaurant also because the service is quick, **friendly and helpful**. My friends and I usually go there for dinner. It **is always packed** when we're there, but we have **never felt rushed by the staff**.

This restaurant is small but **has a cosy atmosphere**, and it is very **well managed**. It proves "Small is beautiful."

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

常客 **a regular** (regular 的这个名词用法在地道英文里谈餐馆和咖啡馆时极为常用)

很容易找到 **is easy to find**                      在……旁边 **is next to...**

只能容纳大约……人 **can only hold about...people** (这是 native speakers 说小型建筑时常用的一种说法)

(桌子) 布置得很整齐的 **are neatly set**

室内的装修风格 **the décor** (decorations 则是指具体的装饰物)

简单但是很吸引人的 **simple but attractive**    菜单 **menu**

多种多样的 **a wide variety of**                      虾饺 **shrimp dumplings**

春卷 **spring rolls**                                      烤排骨 **roasted ribs**

好吃的 **delicious / tasty**                              菜量 **portion**



友好的而且很有帮助的 friendly and helpful 挤满了人的 packed

催促某人 rush someone 员工的统称 staff

舒适的 cosy (地道英文里 cosy 一般是用来形容房间或者家具很舒适)

管理得很好的 is well managed

### 扩展词汇

男服务员 waiter

女服务员 waitress

餐馆的厨师, “大厨” chef

经理 manager

老板 owner

(餐馆) 菜的性价比很高 The food is good value for money (...is good value for money. 或者...offers good value for money. 是英美人说“性价比很高”最常用的两种说法)

桌布 tablecloth

幸运饼 fortune cookie (只在外国的餐馆里才有的东东, 是一个 cookie 小脆饼里面放一张小纸条, 预言你将来的运气)

灯光, 照明 lighting 装饰得很漂亮的 is beautifully-decorated

(服务) 无可挑剔的 impeccable 饭菜的香味儿 aroma

美食爱好者 gourmet 推荐 recommend

获得很好的评价 receive good reviews

虽然“老外”们熟悉的中国菜在国内并不是最流行的菜, 不过建议您考 IELTS 时还是多说考官们真正能听懂的菜名, 比如 sweet and sour soup (酸辣汤), Kung Pao chicken (宫保鸡丁), Ma Po tofu (麻婆豆腐), braised pork (红烧肉), stir-fried string beans (干煸四季豆), Wonton Soup (馄饨), General Tso's Chicken (这个左宗棠鸡在很多海外餐馆里都有, 但 Pat 在中国的餐馆里还真是没找到)。

除了小生意 (small business), IELTS 口试里有时还会考到 Describe a large company. 这个话题。www.fortune.com/fortune500/list 对于财富 500 强企业的详细描述能帮您掌握介绍大公司的各种方式。

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

small business 的特点就是老板通常都是“白手起家”的。要表示“一个白手起家的创业者”，有个很地道但是比较难的英文词 **entrepreneur**，还有 **a self-made man / a self-made woman** 这样既好理解而且也容易在口试时轻松说出来的短语。

### (D) 别 墅

Describe your idea of an ideal house (理想的别墅)。

You should say:

what kind of house it would be

why you would like to live there

what special features it would have

and explain whether you think you will ever live in a house like this.



#### Pat 指南



这个卡片题要求你谈的是“理想的别墅”，所以您可以向考官尽情地展示你会用虚拟语气这种貌似高深、其实没什么难度的句式 😊

难度指数：★★★☆☆

#### Pat 的答案

My ideal house would be just an average house, nothing too **fancy**.

It would be close to **public transport** and have two or three **comfortable** bedrooms, a **spacious** living room, a nice kitchen, some

building





bathrooms and a **garage**. Most importantly, it must have a garden. I would love the feeling of watching my plants grow.

There should be plenty of **appliances** in the kitchen, like a **gas stove**, a **fridge** and a **dishwasher**. Beside the kitchen there would be a **dining area**, with a dining table and some chairs.

The living room must have large windows, a sofa, a coffee table and a **flat-screen TV**.

**What else?** Oh, the bathrooms! There must be a **bath tub** so I could relax in warm water after a busy day. The garage would be for my car, bicycle and tools.

Such a house would cost like 10 million *yuan* in a city like Beijing or Shanghai. So I guess it's nothing more than just a dream for me...

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

普通的 **average** (在这里它不是“平均”的意思)

新奇有趣的 **fancy**

公共交通 **public transport**

宽敞的 **spacious**

车库 **garage**

后院 **backyard**

家用电器 **home appliances**

英美家庭里最常见的家用电器有:

**fridge** 电冰箱

**dishwasher** 洗碗机

**vacuum cleaner** (生活里常简称为 **vacuum**) 吸尘器

**microwave oven** (生活里常简称为 **microwave**) 微波炉

**washing machine** 洗衣机

**dryer** 烘干机

平板电视 **flat-screen TV**

浴缸 **bath tub** (生活里常会直接说 **tub**)

(房间或者家具) 很舒适的 **comfortable / cozy**

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说





### 扩展词汇

很高的天花板	high ceiling	长沙发	sofa / couch
单人沙发或单人座椅	armchair	花瓶	vase
摇椅	rocking chair	壁炉	fireplace
高清电视	HD TV	衣橱	wardrobe
厨房里的橱柜	cupboard (注意听音频里的发音)		
储藏室	closet	还房贷	pay a mortgage
郊区	the suburbs	乡村	the countryside
市中心	downtown	居民区	neighbourhood
装饰	decorations	草坪	lawn
生活和休闲设施	amenities (such as shops, parks and sports centers)		
硬木地板	hardwood flooring (flooring 在地道英文里是指地板的材料)		
它只是个幻想而已	It's just a fantasy.		
一栋只含一户的别墅，独栋别墅	detached house		
一栋含有左右两户的别墅	semi-detached house		
一栋含三户或以上的别墅，联排别墅	terraced house		

有时间的话您还可以登录这个网站，看看普通英国人购买最多的别墅是上面三种里的哪一种：[www.dailymail.co.uk/news/article-2611281](http://www.dailymail.co.uk/news/article-2611281)

### Pat 的海外生活英语实录

地板上的大地毯叫 **carpet**，小方毯叫 **rug**，床上盖的毛毯叫 **blanket**，但墙上挂的挂毯 native speakers 叫什么呢？跟考官说 **a tapestry** /'tæpɪstri/，他/她就会对你刮目相看 (He / She will be amazed. )。

[剑桥例句] It's hard to hang the **tapestry** on this curved wall.



## (E) 最喜欢的房间

Describe your favourite room in your house / flat.

You should say:

where you live

which room it is

what it is like

and explain why you like this room.



难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

### Pat 的答案

I live on the fifth floor of **an eight-storey building**. My favourite room in my flat is the bedroom.

It's not big, just around 10 **square meters**. There's a single bed in the corner, not big either but very comfortable. There's a table **right beside** the bed, with a lamp and a **vase of flowers**. The table is **brand-new**. I bought it last week.



There's a wardrobe **next to** the table. I keep all my favourite clothes in it. There's also a desk with a chair in front of it. My favourite part of the room is the **potted plant** on the desk. It looks **gorgeous** and smells good, too. The walls are light blue, just like the sky on a sunny day.

It's my favourite room because it's **my own personal space** where I can really **enjoy privacy and comfort**. Sometimes I even spend the whole weekend daydreaming there. I like my bedroom also because I **decorated** it all by myself.



## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

一幢……层高的建筑 a...storey building 平方米 square meter  
就在……旁边 is right beside 一瓶花 a vase of flowers  
崭新的 brand-new 衣橱 wardrobe  
紧挨着 next to 盆栽的植物 potted plant  
非常漂亮的 gorgeous 我自己的个人空间 my own personal space  
装饰 decorate

### 扩展词汇

客厅 living room (家人们) 聚到一起 get together  
看电视 watch TV 招待客人 entertain our guests  
餐厅 dining room 全家人一起吃饭 have family meals together  
谈论当天发生的事情 talk about our day  
厨房 kitchen 为家人做饭 cook meals for my family

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

如果您想了解不同形式的房间，[uktv.co.uk/home/dgiped/kw/236](http://uktv.co.uk/home/dgiped/kw/236) 这个网站上有各种房间的布置思路（点击页面上方的 Rooms 可以看到各种房间名称），而且都配有图片，只要“看图说话”再适当描述自己在房间里的活动就好了

## (F) 博物馆

Describe a museum.

You should say:

what kind of museum it is

where it is

what it is like

and explain whether you like it or not.





Pat 指南



Part 2 里还有一道卡片题是 **Describe an art gallery**. 如果准备一个现代艺术馆, 就能把这两道题一起准备好了。

很多同学觉得像这样的话题只有艺术系的学生才能说好, 但 IELTS 口试的出题原则之一就是不考查专业知识 (The test does not require specialised knowledge. )。考官需要你说的只是一个扣题、清晰、英文自然的答案。

难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'd like to talk about my favourite museum — the Modern Art Museum in... (*put the city's name here*)

The museum is near the city center, and is close to **public transport**. It's a large building and looks very modern, with lots of **steel and glass**.

The inside of the building is very **spacious**. It's **divided into** different **sections**, like the Asian Art section, the European Art section and the North American Art section. The museum also provides a wide variety of **art activities** for children, so it's **good for all ages**.

I like this museum because it has **a large collection of** modern **works of art**, and it always has some interesting **exhibitions** going on. For example, last week it held an exhibition of works by some French artists, which **attracted** a lot of visitors.

And unlike many other museums, the staff there encourage visitors to **take non-flash pictures**. This makes the museum even more fun.

My favourite part of the museum is the **sculpture** garden where there are always hundreds of sculptures **on display**.

The **admission fee** to the museum is 20 yuan for adults and 5 yuan for children. I think it's pretty **reasonable**.



## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

公共交通 public transport

钢和玻璃 steel and glass (地道英文常用这个短语来泛指现代建筑的材料)

石头和木头 stone and wood (地道英文常用这个短语来泛指历史建筑的材料)

宽敞的 spacious

井井有条的 is well-organised

布局合理的 is well laid-out

被分成 is divided into...

部分 section

艺术活动 art activities

适合各个年龄段的人们 is good for all ages (是的, 出国以后您就会发现 native speakers 表达这个意思最自然的方式就是这么浅显易懂)

大量的馆藏 a large collection of...

艺术品 works of art

展览 exhibition

吸引 attract

拍摄不用闪光灯的照片 take non-flash pictures

雕塑 sculpture

展出 on display

参观费 admission fee

合理的 reasonable

### 扩展词汇

迷人的 fascinating

展品 exhibit

构图 composition

色彩的搭配 colour scheme

笔触 strokes

人像画 portrait

风景画 landscape painting

静物画 still life

娱乐性很强的 entertaining

信息量很大的 informative

在……漫步 wander around...

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

在 Part 2 描述好一个现代艺术馆只要英文自然、思路清晰就已经很好了。但如果你真的对 modern art 有兴趣, 英国著名的 Tate Modern 官方网站 [www.tate.org.uk/visit/tate-modern](http://www.tate.org.uk/visit/tate-modern) 会让你明白什么是 fun and enjoyable 😊



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

美术馆里照在艺术品上面的光线一般不是天然光线，所以不可以叫 sun，而是要叫作 **lighting** (照明)。

### ☆ 一个历史建筑

#### 寺 庙

难度指数：★★★★☆

#### Pat 的答案



I'm going to talk about a temple in my hometown.

The temple **dates back to** the 15th century. Today, lots of people still go there to **pray** for good luck and good health. Interestingly, although it's a holy place, it's located on the busiest street in my hometown.

But from the moment you enter the temple, you start to feel **calm and peaceful**. Like most historic buildings in the area, the temple faces south, and the front gate is guarded by two stone lions. As you enter **the front hall**, you'll see four wood **sculptures**, which are called "the Four Heavenly Kings".

The Great Hall **is separated from** the front hall with a courtyard where you can see lots of trees and plants. The **roof** of the Great Hall is supported by tall, thick **columns**. Inside the Great Hall, you can see a Buddha statue and the statues of some of his students. On the east and west walls of the Great Hall, you can also find some Buddhist **works of art**.



This temple is not only a holy place. It also **attracts** thousands of tourists each year. And it provides cultural activities as well, including traditional art classes. So besides being a place of worship, it's also **educational and fun**.



## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

它的历史可以追溯到…… It dates back to...

[剑桥例句] This building **dates back to** the 17th century.

神圣的地方 a holy place

祈祷 pray

平静安详的 calm and peaceful

用……守护 is guarded by...

雕塑 sculpture

雕像 statue

与……隔开 is separated from...

庭院 courtyard

屋顶 roof

柱子 column

佛祖 Buddha

艺术品 works of art

从事宗教活动的场所 a place of worship 文化活动 cultural activities

很有知识性而且又很有趣的 educational and fun

佛教徒 Buddhist

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

### 扩展词汇

巨大的 enormous

塔 pagoda

许愿 make a wish

烧香 burn incense sticks

标志性建筑 landmark

重要的历史遗址 historic site

……的故居 the historic residence of...

裂缝 cracks

(对历史建筑进行的) 翻新 renovation 状况完好的 in good condition

中间有庭院的住宅，例如“四合院儿” courtyard house (庭院就叫作 courtyard)

优雅的 elegant

私密的 private

充足的阳光 plenty of sunlight 更加接近自然界 get closer to nature

即使你不是曼联 (Manchester United) 的球迷，这个网站上关于 historic buildings in Manchester 的信息也一定会让你着迷：

[www.visitmanchester.com/what-to-do/attractions/heritage/](http://www.visitmanchester.com/what-to-do/attractions/heritage/)



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

如果说一个历史建筑“保存完好的”，地道英文里最常用的形容词就是 **well-preserved**。

[剑桥例句] The building is **well-preserved** and in good condition

### ☆ 一个图书馆（双语感悟）

#### Bilingual Reflections on Libraries

Describe a library:

You should say:

where the library is

what facilities it has

how often you go there

and explain whether you like the library or not.

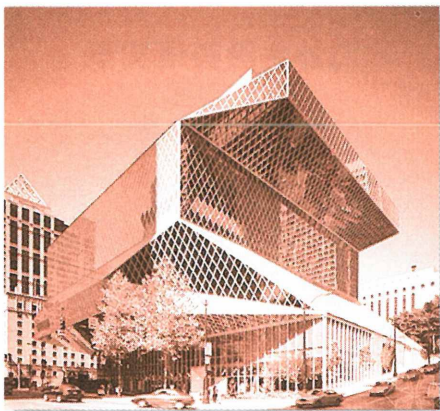
Part 2 里有时会考到校园建筑，可以说的选择很多，比如 cafeteria / canteen（食堂），dorm / dormitory / hall of residence（学生宿舍楼），gym（体育馆或健身房），administration building（行政楼），student union building（学生会大楼）等等。注意：教学楼在英语里一般不叫 teaching building **X**，而是叫作某某 Hall 或者某某 faculty building。

library 是校园建筑里比较好说的一种，光是图书馆里的设施（facilities）和喜欢图书馆的原因（why you like it）就可以谈不少了，而且还可以结合我们在 Day 7 里谈过的与 library 有关的内容（p. 99）。

中国学校里的图书馆通常外观看起来很平淡，但内部明亮整洁（From the outside, it



looks plain, but the inside is bright and clean. ), 但近年来英美的图书馆却有变得越来越“张扬” (bold and daring) 的趋势, Pat 个人最喜欢的是 Seattle Public Library (右图), 真正属于 the Information Age (信息时代) 的建筑。



如果一个图书馆是校园里的标志性建筑, 英文就要说 It's a landmark on our campus. 如果图书馆的外面全都是玻璃, 英文会说 It's wrapped in glass on all sides. 如果还有曲线的墙面, 那么就是 curved walls. 外观很漂亮可以说 It has a beautiful exterior. 室内井然有序要说 The interior is well-organised. 入口处的大厅是 entrance hall 或者 lobby, 大厅里的大柱子叫 tall, thick columns.

图书馆的借书柜台叫 the circulation desk 或者说 the front desk, 还书则没那么麻烦, 直接放进 drop box 就好了。阅览室你说 reading room 考官就能听懂, 英美大学图书馆里还有一种 group study room, 则是进行集体讨论 (group discussions) 用的, 但一般需要提前预订 (reserve)。有的图书馆还有 study carrels, 就是用木板分开的小隔间, 可以自己坐在那里安静地看书。

国外的图书馆按照书库类型分两种: 一种是 open-stack library (读者可以自己入库取书), 另一种 closed-stack library 只能图书管理员入库取书。图书馆的目录室叫 catalogue room, 复印室叫 photocopy room, 计算机房是 computer lab, 多媒体室可以叫 multi-media center. 图书管理员当然是 librarians, 借书请说 check out books, 也有些人会说 sign out books, 还书就是 return books. 过期不还必须交 late fee.

如果你说图书馆的气氛很让人放松, 就是 It offers a relaxing atmosphere. 说图书馆有多种多样的书籍和光盘就说 It has a wide variety of books, CDs and DVDs. 如果还提供免费无线上网 It provides free Wi-Fi. 是爱书者的乐园就叫 It's a mecca for book-lovers!





我们可以把下面这个“不按常理出牌”的卡片 (a wild card) 也放在本节一起准备:

### Describe a famous architect (建筑师).

让孩子们用中文描述一个建筑师都是难题,更别说用英语了。

别急,其实你可以用几分钟就解决它。请分两步走:

(a) 牢记说艺术家的几个英文必备词: **talented** 有才华的, **prolific** 高产的, 作品“源源不断的”, **creative designs** 很有创意的设计, **be passionate about** 对……满腔热情的, **masterpiece** 杰作;

(b) 简要了解一个建筑师的生平,比如有个网站是世界顶级建筑师大全 [www.greatbuildings.com/architects.html](http://www.greatbuildings.com/architects.html)。这个网站上建筑师的人名都是按英文姓氏的首字母排列的,点击其中一个然后下拉到 **Biography** 就行了,比如,请您找一找华人的骄傲 I. M. Pei (贝聿铭)。

更棒的是,准备好了这道题,我们就可以一起把看似很难的另外两道题 **Describe an artist** 和 **Describe a creative person** 也同时准备好了。



## B 组织和个人

### Pat 解题

这一节我们学习对于 **organisation** 和 **individuals** 的描述。

其实最好说的 **organisation** 就是一个 English learning club 了，说说它在哪里，什么人爱去，再谈谈自己熟悉的 English lectures, English corner 和 the importance of English 就够了。不过我想中国孩子们最感兴趣的 organisation 之一是 the NBA，所以今天我们会好好看看这个组织。其实描述什么 organisation 都是可以的，我们的本质任务是要练出清晰、自然的英文进行描述的能力。

至于 **individual**，当然就是“个人”。每天咱们都和个人打交道，但其实描述个人并不容易。比如一个“胖”英语就有很多词，除了 fat（很贬义），还有 overweight（语气稍客气一点），chubby（胖乎乎的），pudgy（又矮又胖的），stout（粗壮的），怎一个“胖”字了得。

又比如“外向的”，“内向的”，Pat 经常听到国内孩子们用 extroverted 和 introverted，但这两个词其实有点大，在国外生活中虽然有时听到，但用得并不算频繁。生活口语说“外向的”其实可以说 He's very **sociable**. (= outgoing)，而“内向的”则可以说 He's quiet around people he doesn't know well. (= not so outgoing)，反而更自然。

本节咱们就要研究各种不同的人。

OK. Here we go.

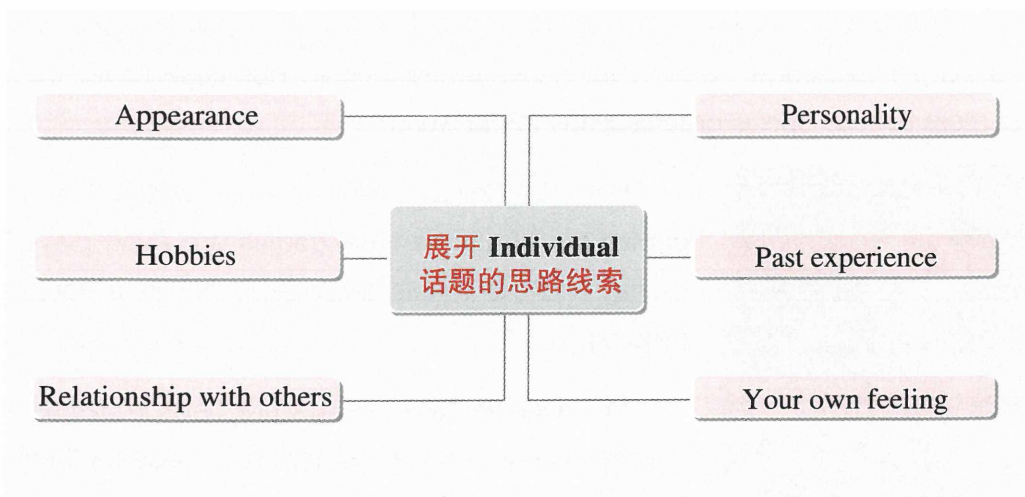
### 本类话题最有代表性的真题 Typical Topics

- ✳ Describe a family member.
- ✳ Describe an elderly person.
- ✳ Describe a teacher who helped you before.
- ✳ Describe a famous person who you admire.
- ✳ Describe an ideal job.



## 展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Maps

(如果卡片上的4个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案，那么下面的思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)





## 分级演示 Sample Answers

### 1. 组织 (organisation)

Describe an organisation.

You should say:

which organisation it is

what kind of organisation it is

whether it is popular

and explain whether you like it or not.



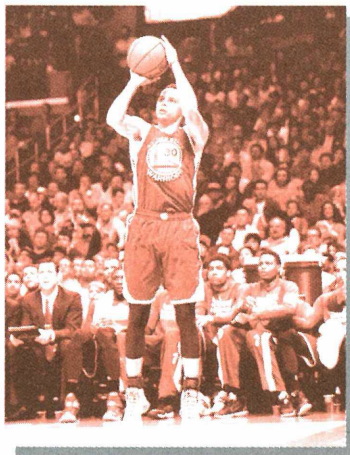
#### ☆ 一个组织之 NBA

难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

#### Pat 的答案

I'd like to talk about the NBA, which **stands for** the National Basketball Association.

**As far as I know** (国内孩子说卡片的一个问题就是口气总像该领域的权威似的,但其实听起来挺假的,因为并没有人会所有问题上的专家), it was **founded** in New York about 70 years ago. **At first**, things were pretty hard, but **these days**, it's one of the most famous sports organisations in the world.



Here in China, many people watch **live** NBA games on TV. Some NBA games are even played in China, and the tickets always **sell out** in a couple of minutes.

My favourite NBA players are LeBron James and Stephen Curry. They are really cool. I admire them not just for their success, but also for their spirit, you know, their **sportsmanship**. They're real **legends** in my eyes.



The NBA is also a legend because it's so successful, and NBA games are always exciting to watch. I really hope more NBA players will come to China and show us their amazing basketball skills.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

联合会 association 是……的缩写 stand for...

成立于…… was founded in... (这个 founded 不是“被找到”，而是“被成立”)

现场直播的比赛 live / laiv / games

(门票) 卖光 sell out (地道英文里这个短语一般不用被动)

运动员精神 sportsmanship 传奇 legend

### 扩展词汇

常规赛 regular season

季后赛 playoffs

受到热捧 enjoy a huge following

最有价值球员 MVP

有影响力的 influential

团队精神 team spirit

队员们都很有团队精神 There's real team spirit.

激励年轻人 inspire young people

励志的 inspiring

热情 passion

管理得很完善的 well-managed

很有娱乐性的 entertaining

金州勇士队 Golden State Warriors

芝加哥公牛队 Chicago Bulls

达拉斯小牛队 Dallas Mavericks (地道英文里也常简称为 the Mavs)

迈阿密热火队 Miami Heat

休斯敦火箭队 Houston Rockets

波士顿凯尔特人队 Boston Celtics

洛杉矶湖人队 L. A. Lakers

洛杉矶快船队 Los Angeles Clippers

克里夫兰骑士队 Cleveland Cavaliers

奥兰多魔术队 Orlando Magic

底特律活塞队 Detroit Pistons



圣安东尼奥马刺队 San Antonio Spurs (简称 the Spurs)

俄克拉荷马雷霆队 Oklahoma City Thunder

菲尼克斯太阳队 Phoenix Suns (这个州的夏天超热, 这大概也锻炼了球员们们的顽强精神)

如果您是一位铁杆儿的足球迷 (a passionate football fan), 那么这个网站可以解答您关于 FIFA 的各种问题: [www.fifa.com/faq.html](http://www.fifa.com/faq.html)

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

两支球队“棋逢对手”应该怎样表达呢? 跟 chess 或者 opponents 都没关系, 而应该用 **evenly-matched** 这个简单却地道的词。

【剑桥例句】The two teams were really **evenly-matched**.

请仔细听音频文件里这些 NBA 球星的名字怎么发音 (并且猜一猜他们是谁):

LeBron James

Stephen Curry

Paul George

Kyrie Irving

Draymond Green

Blake Griffin

Derrick Rose

Russell Westbrook

Kevin Durant

Ricky Rubio

沿着这道题的思路, 我们把下面这道题一起快速准备一下。



## Describe a sports star you admire.

孙杨并不是一个完美的人，他有时会很叛逆 (rebellious)，不听领导的话，还是个“爱哭”的运动员。但他活得很真实 (is always true to his heart)，坚持自己的信念 (He stands up for what he believes is right)，而且训练极为刻苦 (He trains extremely hard.)，所以 BBC 的 Sportsworld 节目说孙杨是“最伟大的自由泳运动员之一” (one of the greatest freestyle swimmers of all time) 是有道理的。



Fast Facts about Sun Yang:

He *was born and raised in* Hangzhou.

He *began swimming at a very young age.*

He *started competing at the international level* at the age of 16.

He *competed at the 2009 World Swimming Championships in Rome and won his first international medal* (奖牌) in the 1,500-meter freestyle competition.

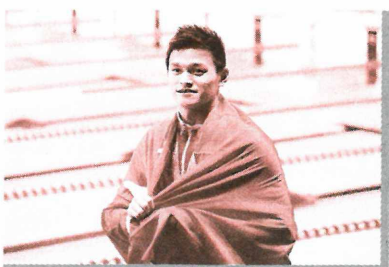
He *broke the 1,500-meter freestyle world record* in 2011.

At the 2012 Olympic Games in London, he *was one of only two male swimmers who won two individual swimming gold medals* (个人游泳项目金牌). The other one was Michael Phelps (菲尔普斯).

At the 2018 Asian Games, he *won four individual swimming gold medals.*

I *admire him not just because he's a great athlete but also because he is always true to his heart.*

He's *straightforward* (直率的) and *doesn't hide his emotions* (不隐藏自己的真实感).



He *stands up for what he believes is right* (坚持自己的信念).

I really love *this quote from Sun Yang*, "You can imagine how hard it is, but there's always a force that pushes me forward to do all I can."



如果您“粉”的体育明星不是孙杨，没关系，不妨到 [www.biography.com/people/groups/sports](http://www.biography.com/people/groups/sports) 看一看，比如在页面右上角的放大镜搜索框里分别输入 Yao Ming 和 Cristiano Ronaldo，您就可以找到对姚明和 C 罗的介绍了。

## ☆ 一个组织之 健身俱乐部

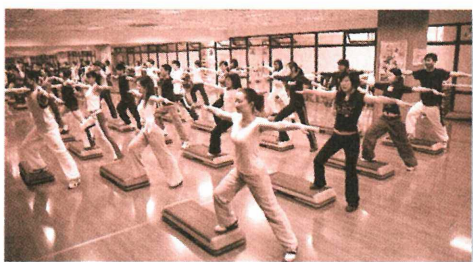
难度指数：★★★★☆



### Pat 的答案

Let me talk about the **fitness club** I attend. It's very close to where I live. I go there almost every afternoon. Some friends of mine also go there to **work out**.

It offers a wide variety of **memberships**, and the membership fees are quite **reasonable**. They even have three-day **guest passes** for people who visit their club for the first time. The club also provides group exercise classes and **yoga** classes.



I like this fitness club because it's well-managed. It has lots of exercise machines, including **treadmills**, **exercise bikes** and **steppers**. The **equipment** is very clean and in good condition. All the employees, from the front-desk people to the **trainers**, are friendly and helpful. And with my membership, I can also use the swimming pool in the club for free, so it's really **good value for money**.

My only **complaint** is sometimes it's a bit too **crowded**. But most of the time, there's plenty of space for everyone so it's not a big problem.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

健身俱乐部 **fitness club / health club** 健身 **work out**

会员资格 **membership** 瑜伽 **yoga**

合理的 **reasonable** 免费体验券 **guest pass**



跑步机 treadmill

固定健身单车 exercise bike / stationary bike

踏步机 steppers

设备 equipment

健身教练 trainer

它的性价比很高 It's good value for money.

抱怨 complaint

拥挤的 crowded



### 扩展词汇

保持体格强健 keep fit

增强肌肉 build muscles

减轻压力，“减压” reduce stress

减肥 lose weight

普拉提 Pilates

尊巴舞 Zumba dance

推荐 recommend

泛指举哑铃或者杠铃，“撸铁” lift weights

哑铃 dumbbell

杠铃 barbell

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

[www.olympic.org/athletes](http://www.olympic.org/athletes) 这个网站提供了很多体育明星的介绍，比如点击右上角的搜索键，在搜索栏里输入 Dan Lin，点击 Go，然后点击林丹的头像，您就能看到对林丹的详细介绍了。

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

您出国之后立马就会发现：健身对于年轻白人来说实在是生活里太重要的一个部分了，Pat 的很多朋友都是命可以不要，但是不能不去 gym，如果有几天没去撸铁（lift weights）就开始“hold 不住”甚至 feel guilty（有负罪感）。参加健身俱乐部的目标多半是为了让自己变得“更有形儿”，用地道英语介绍这种目的绝不能说 give myself more shape ✕，而要说 **get toned**。假如你的考官正好也是一年轻白人，考试时你能在扣题的前提下用出这个表达，会立刻让他/她“心有戚戚焉”，不信你就试试。

【剑桥例句】Leo is exercising regularly to **get toned**.



## 2. 个人

Describe a famous singer.

You should say:

who the singer is

how the singer became famous

what is special about his / her music

and explain whether you like the singer or not.



### ☆ 娱乐人物之 歌手

Pat 个人更喜欢创作型歌手 (singer-songwriter), 比如中国的李健、阿信, 国外的 Ed Sheeran, The Weeknd, Charlie Puth, Chris Martin 等。而且从回答 Part 2 的角度来看, 创作型歌手可说的内容也更多😊。

在这里谈谈 Jay Chou 和他的音乐。少年时 Jay 的音乐占据了我们的 MP3, 长大后 Jay 的音乐又占据了我们的 iPod。作为一个“不靠颜值” (famous for talent rather than for good looks) 的创作型歌手, Jay 还是很典型的。

难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

#### Pat 的答案

I guess you've heard a lot about Jay Chou because he's so famous in China.

He grew up in a single-parent family. When he was little, Jay didn't get good grades at school. His mother was really **concerned about** him. When he felt down or lonely, he looked for nice music to **cheer him up**.

He was kind of **average-looking**, so no one really expected him to **make it** as a singer. He started out as a **songwriter** and wrote songs for many popular singers.





Then he **released his first album**, “Jay”. His voice was so **unique** that the album became **an instant hit**. So far all of his albums have received great reviews. He also continues to write songs for other singers, including Leehom Wang (王力宏) and Terry Lin (林志炫).

I like Jay Chou because his music is very different from other musicians'. He likes to **blend** a wide variety of music styles, such as R&B, **hip-hop**, and **folk music** — very **creative** and **memorable**. I guess that's why the tickets to his concerts always **sell out** in a couple of hours.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

创作型歌手 **a singer-songwriter**

在校成绩 **grades at school**

让某人振作起来 **cheer sb. up**

获得成功 **make it**

独特的 **unique**

一发行就立刻热卖的作品 **an instant hit**

结合 **blend**

嘻哈音乐 **hip-hop music**

有创意的 **creative**

卖光了 **sell out** (地道英文里这个短语一般不用被动)

多才多艺的 **multi-talented**

担心, 忧虑 **be concerned about...**

外表普通的 **average-looking**

出专辑 **release an album**

很受欢迎的作品 **a bit hit**

获得很高的评价 **receive great reviews**

节奏布鲁斯 **R & B (Rhythm & Blues)**

民间音乐 **folk music**

很容易记住的 **memorable**



### 扩展词汇

签唱片合同, “签约” **sign a recording contract**

奖项 **award**

乐评人 **music critic**

叛逆的人 **rebel** (作名词时它的读音是/ˈrebel/)

拒绝迎合主流媒体 **ignore the press**

传奇人物 **a legend**

多才多艺的 **multi-talented**

(作家或音乐创作人) 高产的 **prolific**



单曲 single

歌词 lyrics

感人的 touching

励志的 inspiring

低沉的嗓音 a deep and mellow voice

轻柔的嗓音 a soft and pleasant voice

高亢、有冲击力的嗓音 a high-pitched and powerful voice

擅长唱高音的“假声” has a nice falsetto

名望与财富 fame and wealth

勤奋敬业的 hardworking and dedicated

一夜成名 an overnight success

音乐界 the music scene

乐队成员 band members

主唱 lead singer / lead vocalist

吉他手 guitarist

贝斯手 bassist

鼓手 drummer

键盘手 keyboard player

关系很好，很“合得来” get on very well

男孩组合（比如英国的 One Direction 和中国的 TFBOYS）

boy band（注意：地道英文里不说 boys' band ✕）

喜欢欧美音乐的朋友应该经常看看这个有趣又有用的网站：[www. biography. com/people/groups/singer](http://www.biography.com/people/groups/singer)，例如，请您迅速找出 Taylor Swift, Ed Sheeran 和 The Weeknd 等创作型歌手的详细介绍

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

周董已经不是“范特西”（Fantasy）年代的“小鲜肉”（a fresh-faced young man），甚至已经到了粉丝们在演唱会上举牌要求他减肥的程度。但他的音乐不知不觉地火了十多年，而且始终保持了高质量，堪称是音乐界的传奇人物。“音乐界”的英文是 the music scene，而“传奇人物”则叫 a legend。

【剑桥例句】Jazz legend, Ella Fitzgerald, once sang in this bar.



## ☆ 艺术家之 梵高

难度指数：★★★★☆

Pat 的答案



I'm going to talk about an artist I admire, Vincent Van Gogh (梵高). He was a 19<sup>th</sup>-century Dutch painter.

Van Gogh was very talented and creative. Instead of just trying to copy what he saw, he used colours freely in order to better **express his feelings**. His painting style influenced and **inspired** many other painters. And now he's considered one of the greatest artists in history.



I admire Van Gogh not just because he was so talented, but also because he had great **sympathy** for the poor. He often painted farmers and workers in his paintings. He even gave away most of his own money to help poor people.

Van Gogh sold only one painting during his **lifetime**. But I think he's much more than a great painter. He's one of the greatest cultural heroes of modern times.

### 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

#### ► Tool Box

荷兰的 **Dutch**

有才华的 **talented**

有创意的 **creative**

表达他的感受 **express his feelings**

激励 **inspire**

同情心 **sympathy**

泛指贫穷的人们 **the poor**

他在世的时候 **during his lifetime**



#### 扩展词汇

很有同情心的 **compassionate**

名誉 **fame**



抽象的 abstract

(艺术家) 多产的 prolific

受到很高的评价 receive great reviews 天才 genius

杰作 masterpiece

关于艺术家，这个网站最大的优点是内容相当专业，可英文却简单得跟玩儿似的：  
[www.biographyonline.net/artists.html](http://www.biographyonline.net/artists.html)

以下这个网站则不仅覆盖了欧美历史上最著名的艺术家们的生平，  
而且还提供了大量图片帮你亲眼“见证”这些艺术家的独特风格：  
[totallyhistory.com/art-history/famous-artists/](http://totallyhistory.com/art-history/famous-artists/)

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

成功的艺术家通常都会有很独特的风格。基础一般的国内同学会用 He/She has a very special style. 来表达这个意思，基础好的同学们则多半会讲 He/She has a unique style. (请注意：“very unique” X 是中式英语，因为 unique 本身就不能再比较程度了)。但其实，在地道英文里还有 **instantly recognisable** (一眼就能辨认出来的) 这样更形象的说法。

【剑桥例句】The Eiffel Tower in Paris is an **instantly recognisable** landmark.

## ☆ 成功的领袖之“小扎”(扎克伯格)

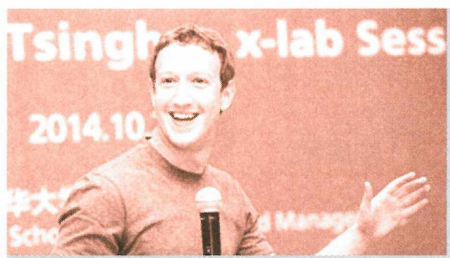
难度指数 ★★★★★



### Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about Mark Zuckerberg, the CEO of Facebook.

He was born in New York. As a child, he was very good at computer programming. After graduating from high school, he attended





Harvard University and **founded** Facebook, a **social networking website**, in his **dorm room**. Today, Facebook is one of the most popular websites on the Internet.

I admire him because he's a **hardworking and dedicated** leader. He **works long hours**, and expects his employees to work hard, too. But he also **treats his employees very well**. They are paid well and have a lot of **freedom** to make decisions on their own. That's why Facebook was voted "the best company in the world to work for".

Mark Zuckerberg is also a talented and creative leader. He's always working on new ideas to improve Facebook and **bring people closer together**. Every day, millions of people **share ideas and experiences** with their friends on Facebook.

Mark Zuckerberg is a great **public speaker** as well. He even did a **Q&A session** in Chinese at Tsinghua University. That **inspired** me a lot. He must have worked really hard on his Chinese skills.

Mark Zuckerberg is not just a successful business leader, but also an excellent **role model** for young people.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

建立 **found** (过去时是 **founded**)

社交网站 **social networking website** (口语里也经常简称为 **social networking site**)

宿舍里的寝室 **dorm room**      勤奋敬业的 **hardworking and dedicated**

长时间地工作 **work long hours** (看起来很“弱”，但这个短语其实是英文里说努力工作最常用的地道 phrase 之一，您跟 **native speakers** 一试便知)

有才华而且很有创意的 **talented and creative**

(地道短语) 拉近人与人之间的距离 **bring people closer together**

公共演讲者 **public speaker**

问答时段 **Q & A session / question and answer session**

激励 **inspire**      榜样 **role model**

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说





### 扩展词汇

创业者 **entrepreneur**

完全凭借自身努力成功的人 **a self-made man / a self-made woman**

领导才能 **leadership skills** 谦虚低调的 **humble and modest**

感到很有动力的 **feel motivated** 高科技产品 **high-tech products**

励志的 **inspiring** 勇气 **courage**

传记 **biography** 自传 **autobiography**

最畅销作品 **bestseller**

(乔布斯的名言) “保持对新事物的渴望，并敢于承担风险。”

**“Stay hungry. Stay foolish.”**

这个网址提供了大量当代著名商业领袖的详尽介绍：**www.biography.com/people/groups/business-leaders** 例如，您还可以用页面右上角的放大镜轻松地找到对苹果现任 CEO Tim Cook 和“特斯拉”(Tesla) CEO Elon Musk 的完整介绍。

Part 2 里面有时还会考到你喜欢的一本书。你的选择当然很多，而且只要坚持用浅显易懂的英语那么也不会很难。但描述一个名人的传记 (biography) 仍然是其中最轻松的选择之一，因为你只要说明自己是在哪里看到的这本书，价格如何，你为什么决定要买，读了之后有什么感受就好了。其中的第 3 点和第 4 点可以和描述一个你崇拜的 leader 或者 artist 充分结合起来准备，是“省时、省事”的好方法（当然也别忘了 p. 78 关于 reading 的内容）

### Pat 的海外生活英语实录

真正成功的领袖必然是有魅力的，但“魅力”一词如果用国内朋友们使用过度的 charm 来表达却实在是相当地没有“魅力”。请改用 **charisma** /kə'rizmə/ 来描述政治家、企业家或者明星们等公众人物的“范儿”吧，考官对这个词的反应绝不会让你后悔。

【剑桥例句】How did a man of so little personal **charisma** get to be a leader?



## ☆ 家庭成员之 母亲

(您还可以用这道题同时准备描述老师的词汇和短语)



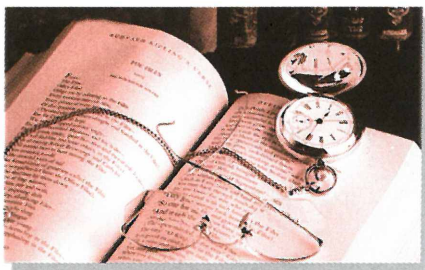
难度指数: ★★★★★

### Pat 的答案

Let me talk about my mother. She's **of average height and build**. She has long hair and wears glasses.

My mother is a high school teacher. She's **caring and understanding**, and she's always ready to help others, including her students and her **colleagues**.

She's very good at **sharing her knowledge** with her students because she can explain things in a simple and clear way. She also has **a good sense of humour** and always tries to make her classes **fun and interesting**. She's a teacher who really **cares about** her students, and she always has a smile on her face. I think that's why her students like her so much.



As a wife and a mother, she loves her family and **takes good care of** everyone. When I was a child, she often helped me with homework, and told me interesting stories **at bedtime**. Now she still likes to share her ideas and opinions with me. But she's **never forced her opinions on me**. She **respects me** and supports me in everything I do.

My mother also has amazing **cooking skills**. The food she cooks is simple, but tastes really good. So she's not just an excellent teacher, but also a great mother, and a person I can always turn to for **good advice**. And everyone says I **take after** her...

轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

中等身材 **is of average height and build** (这个固定说法里的 build 是作名词)



关心别人而且善解人意的 caring and understanding

同事 colleague (请您注意听音频里 colleagues 的正确发音, 很多中国同学会说错这个词)

分享知识 share her knowledge 很有幽默感 has a good sense of humour

关心 care about 面带微笑 has a smile on her face

照顾 take good care of...

准备睡觉的时候 at bedtime (家长给孩子讲的“睡前故事”英文里就叫 bedtime stories)

把她的意见强加给我 ..... force her opinions on me ...

厨艺 cooking skills 很好的建议 good advice / sound advice

孩子像父母 take after (my mother / my father)



### 扩展词汇

友善的、耐心的 kind and patient

勤奋的、敬业的 hardworking and dedicated

生活态度很积极 has a positive outlook on life

外向的, 喜欢社交的 sociable

很好的榜样 a good role model

要求严格但是很公平的 strict but fair

鼓励学生独立地思考 encourage her students to think independently

鼓励学生有创意地思考 encourage her students to think creatively

帮助学生树立自信 help students build self-confidence

让学生们总是很有动力去学习 keep students motivated to learn

很好接近的, 平易近人的 approachable

和家长们紧密合作 work closely with parents

不听讲的学生, “捣乱”的学生 disruptive students

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



给老师的苹果 **an apple for the teacher** (英美的学生常用一个苹果来表示对某个老师的喜爱)

时间充裕的同学还可以看看这个网址: [www.theguardian.com/teacher-network/teacher-blog/2014/oct/31/effective-teaching-10-tips](http://www.theguardian.com/teacher-network/teacher-blog/2014/oct/31/effective-teaching-10-tips) 看看英国人对真正行之有效的教学 (effective teaching) 的理解和国内老师们有什么相同和不同

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

在这个答案里, 您看到了不少描述好老师的地道词汇。

在英美文化里, 人们公认的一个好老师标准除了 patient (耐心的), confident (自信的), know his / her subject well (对自己的教学科目有深入的了解) 之外, “口齿清晰、表达能力强”也是必不可少的要求之一。所以当准备 a teacher 这个话题的时候, 请务必记牢 **articulate** /ɑ:ˈtikjʊlət/ 这个单词, 因为它就是在国外生活里形容一个人口齿清晰、表达能力强最常用的词。

[剑桥例句] This young lady was **intelligent** (聪明的) and **articulate**.

### 启发



IELTS 口试里有时会考 Describe a well-paid job you want to do in the future. 这个话题。您可以在这里找到对英国最高薪酬行业的详细介绍: [www.reed.co.uk/career-advice/10-of-the-highest-paying-jobs-2018/](http://www.reed.co.uk/career-advice/10-of-the-highest-paying-jobs-2018/)

如果对您来说实现工作和生活的合理平衡 (achieve work-life balance) 更重要, 那么在这里可以找到容易实现工作和生活合理平衡的 29 种职业选择: [www.benefitnews.com/slideshow/best-29-careers-for-a-work-life-balance](http://www.benefitnews.com/slideshow/best-29-careers-for-a-work-life-balance)

Part 2 里还有这样一个卡片: Describe a job that can make the world a better place. “能够让世界变得更美好的工作”, 这话题真能让考生当场 pass out。其实仔细想想, 教师不正是这样的工作么? 或者说一个跟环保有关的工作也是扣题的: [www.renewableenergyjobs.com/content/what-is-a-green-job](http://www.renewableenergyjobs.com/content/what-is-a-green-job) 点击这个网页上面的任何一个工作, 您就能立刻找到对它的详细描述。



## ☆ 老人和儿童（双语感悟） Bilingual Reflections

描述老人时当然也可以借用我们在前面一道题里谈到的地道词汇和短语，例如 kind and patient, a good role model, friendly and helpful 等。英文里还有不少好词和好短语则是专门描述老年人的时候用的。

老人身体很好，我们除了可以说 He's / She's **healthy and active**. 地道英文里还专门有 He's / She's **hale and hearty**. 这个说法，是特指老年人的身体好，“老当益壮”。如果老年人走路已经需要拐杖，地道英文则会说 He / She walks slowly with **a walking stick**.

白发就是 **white hair**，灰发是 **grey hair**，而“花白的头发”在地道英文里则叫 **salt and pepper hair**。如果已经秃顶，英文会用形容词 **bald**。如果有白胡子，就说 He has **a white beard**。脸上有皱纹英文要说 He / She has some **wrinkles** on his / her face.



说老年人很乐观，除了大词 optimistic 之外，还可以用更简单的英文说 He / She always **looks on the bright side of things**. 老人心态年轻要说 He's / She's **young at heart**. 很有幽默感当然就说 **has a good sense of humour** 最地道。老年人下棋是 **play chess**，打麻将就是 **play mahjong**，经常锻炼就是 **exercise regularly**，打太极叫 **practise taichi**，遛狗是 **walk his (or her) dog**，悠闲地散步、“遛弯儿”是 **take a stroll**，“跳广场舞”则要叫 **practise their Square Dance routine**。

要说老人“睿智”，那么仅仅用 bright 可就不够了，应该说 **wise** 才对。老人的记忆力还是很好就说 He / She still **has a great memory**. 老人的思维依然清晰是 His / Her mind is still **sharp**. 老人还是非常好学要说 He's / She's still **eager to learn**. 老年人的人生经历丰富是 He / She has a lot of **life experience**. 如果说“我总是可以从他 / 她那里获得很好的建议”，地道英文里常会说 **I can always count on him (or her) for good advice**.

对于儿童，地道英文里同样有很多形象的词汇和短语，而且也都不难。

小朋友胖乎乎的叫 **chubby**，比较瘦的叫 **slim**（如果说 thin 则听起来会略带贬义），描述小朋友很可爱除了 cute 之外也可以说 **adorable**。



小朋友的身心都很健康就说 is **happy and healthy**, 喜欢户外活动是 **likes outdoor activities**, 小朋友很有活力在地道英文里会说 He's / She's **full of energy** 或者 **lively and energetic**, 性格很外向叫 He's / She's very **sociable**. 跟谁都能玩儿得来是 He / She **gets on well with** everybody. 喜欢和别人合作就说 He / She is a **team player**. 如果小朋友跟自己不熟悉的人在一起时会比较安静, 则说 He / She **tends to be quiet** around people he / she doesn't know well.



小朋友在学校成绩好要说 He / She **gets good grades** at school. 很守规矩的叫 **well-behaved**, 有礼貌而且尊敬别人的叫 **polite and respectful**, 是同班同学们的榜样英文是 He's / She's **a role model for** his / her classmates, 聪明而且又有创造力的叫 **intelligent and creative**, 在某方面有天赋要说 **has a talent for** (music, painting, maths 等), 说一个小朋友学习努力, 虽然也可以说 **studies hard**, 但在真实的英美生活里还是 He / She **works hard**. 更常用。

小朋友的求知欲很强, 凡事总爱问个为什么, 英文里说 He / She **has an inquiring mind**. 孩子是父母的“掌上明珠”, 地道英文叫 He's / She's **the apple of his (or her) parents' eye**. 要注意的是: 这是个英美生活里的惯用说法, apple 和 eye 都用单数听起来才 native。



## C 人与自然

## Pat 解题



**natural beauty** 这个词在英文中其实有两个意思，一个是指自然的美景，另一个是指“素颜”的美。当然两个意思都挺好，但这一节咱们只说第一个。

英美的生活离自然还是挺近的。Pat 在 BC 开车时还见过一只灰熊 (grizzly bear) 妈妈带着两只熊宝 (bear cubs) 慢悠悠地违章横穿马路，如果真的不小心撞到 (run over) 它们，就要被动物权益主义者们 (animal rights activists) 告上法庭 (be taken to court) 了。

英国和北美的生活里最重要的娱乐也是 fishing, camping (野营), hiking (远足), skiing (滑雪) 等接近大自然的活动，而且英国、美国和加拿大的国家公园都很多。Pat 个人最喜欢 Alberta 的 Banff，那里的自然美景真的把人的呼吸都带走了 (The scenery is really **breath-taking**.)。



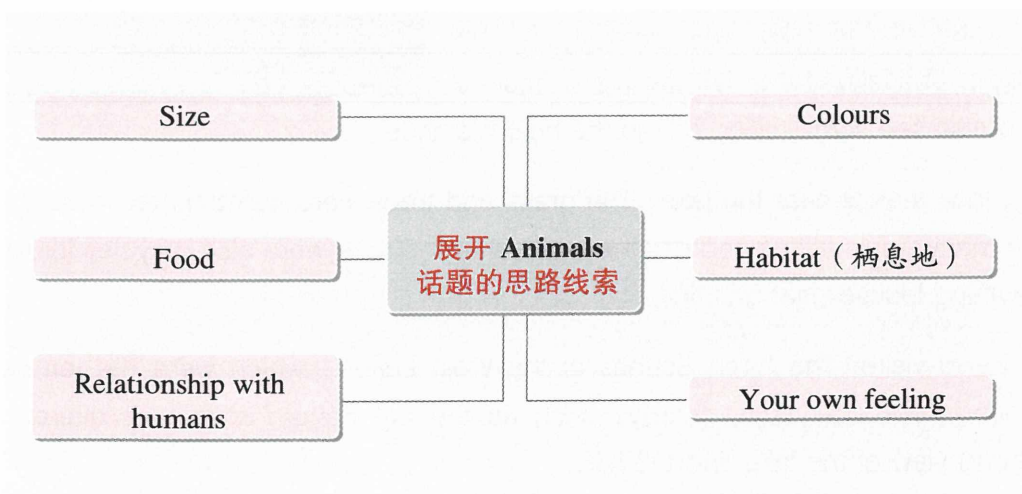
## 本类话题最有代表性的真题 Typical Topics

- ✱ Describe a park.
- ✱ Describe a good place to relax.
- ✱ Describe a short trip.
- ✱ Describe a river / lake / sea.
- ✱ Describe a place of natural beauty.



## 展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Maps

(如果卡片上的4个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案，那么下面的思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)





## 分级演示 Sample Answers

## 1. 一个有水的地方

☆ 西湖

Describe a river, lake or sea you have visited.

You should say:

where it was

when you went there

what you saw there

and explain whether you would like to go there again.



难度指数: ★★★★★

## Pat 的答案

I visited the West Lake last September. It's close to downtown Hangzhou and very easy to get to by **public transport**.

I visited the lake on a clear, sunny day. The water of the lake was **sparkling** in the sunlight. The lake **breeze** felt warm and fresh. I could also see some **rolling hills** in the near distance.



I took a **stroll** near the lake. The grass and trees were **well-trimmed**, and there were many **picnic tables** and **benches** by the lake. There were also bicycles for rent. Everything looked **neat and tidy**.

I also visited the "Ten Scenes of the West Lake", which were the ten most famous **tourist attractions** nearby, such as the Lei Feng **Pagoda**. It offered an amazing view of the lake and the hills.

I really enjoyed the stroll. The lake and its **surroundings** felt so **calm and peaceful**. I took lots of photos there. I really hope I'll visit it again.



## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

市中心 downtown

闪亮 sparkling

起伏的小山 rolling hill

散步，很悠闲地走 take a stroll

野餐桌 picnic table

干净整洁的 neat and tidy

亚洲国家的古塔 pagoda

宁静安详的 calm and peaceful

公共交通 public transport

微风 breeze

在不远处 in the near distance

修剪得很好的 well-trimmed

室外的长椅 bench

旅游景点 tourist attractions

周围的环境 surroundings



### 描述风景的扩展词汇

自然风光（注意：它是不可数的） scenery

清澈的 crystal-clear

壮观的 spectacular

非常美的 gorgeous / breathtaking

瀑布 waterfall

轰鸣 roar

岩石 rock

喜欢大自然的人们必去的地方 a must-see for nature lovers

峡谷 valley

山泉 mountain spring

温泉 hot spring

人造的喷泉 fountain

自然界的天然草地 meadow

人工维护的草地 lawn

亭子 gazebo

盛开的花 blooming flowers

芳香 fragrance

花坛 flowerbed

（鸟或昆虫）鸣叫 chirp

秋叶 autumn leaves / autumn foliage（注意 foliage 不可数）

野餐 have a picnic

去远足，徒步旅行 go hiking

去野营 go camping



做日光浴 go sunbathing (注意听音频里它的正确读音)

宿营地 campsite

烧烤 have a barbecue

在湖上划船 row a boat on the lake 闪亮的水面 sparkling water

泛起波纹的水面 rippling water

光着脚在沙滩上走 walk barefoot on the beach

搭沙堡 build sandcastles

捡贝壳 collect shells

海鸥 seagulls

摆脱繁忙的都市生活 get away from busy city life

更加接近大自然 get closer to nature

感觉心情平静并且很放松的 feel calm and relaxed

暂时忘掉工作 forget about work for a while

让疲劳的身心恢复良好的状态 recharge my batteries

小村庄 village

当地人 locals

热情好客的 are welcoming and friendly

历史遗迹 historic sites

维护得很好的 well-maintained

参观费 admission fee

旅行纪念品 souvenirs

令人愉快的经历 an enjoyable experience

令人难忘的经历 a memorable experience

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

Part 2 里面还有一道相关考题是 Describe a place near water (一个靠近水的地方)。其实只要描述一栋湖边的别墅或者一个海边的宾馆，我们就可以把学过的关于别墅和宾馆的地道词汇和短语自然而且扣题地使用起来。您还可以从 [www.huffingtonpost.co.uk/2014/06/20/beach-hotels-britain-uk-good-hotel-guide\\_n\\_5515270.html](http://www.huffingtonpost.co.uk/2014/06/20/beach-hotels-britain-uk-good-hotel-guide_n_5515270.html) 这个网址看到对英国最棒的一些水边宾馆的详细介绍。



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

“风景如画的”，如果说 It looks like a picture. 并不严格对应，因为 picture 其实也可以很丑，但 picture 的形容词形式 **picturesque** /pɪktʃə'resk/ 在地道口语中却是一个纯粹的褒义词。例如：

【剑桥例句】It's a **picturesque** village.

## 2. 公园 / 花园

Describe a park / garden.

You should say:

what it's called

where it is

what people do there

and explain whether you like the park / garden or not.



### ☆ 公园之 海洋公园

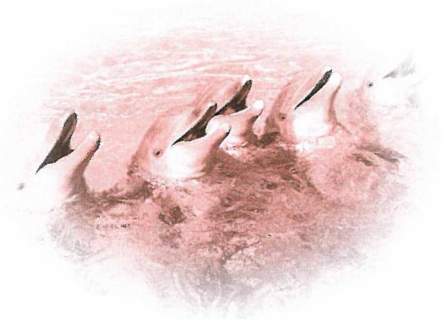
难度指数：★★★☆☆

#### Pat 的答案

I'd like to describe Ocean Park Hong Kong. It's about a 20-minute drive from downtown Hong Kong.

The park has many different **sections**. There's a lot to see and do as you walk around these sections.

For example, in the "Strait" section, you'll find thousands of **sea creatures**, including sharks, turtles and seahorses. In the outdoor "Wild Coast" section, you can see the exciting dolphin show. And in the play area, children





can even touch some of the sea creatures they like.

I like the Ocean Park because it has an amazing variety of sea creatures. It can really help visitors **learn about** sea life. The park is also very **well-organised**, and the employees are friendly and helpful. I think the park is good for all ages.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

部分 **parts / sections**

海峡 **strait**

海洋里的动物 **sea creatures** (地道英文也常用 **creatures** 来泛指动物)

鲨鱼 **shark**

龟 **turtle**

海马 **seahorse**

海豚 **dolphin**

井井有条的 **well-organised**



### 扩展词汇

海狮 **sea lion**

海象 **walrus**

海豹 **seal**

虎鲸 **orca / killer whale**

水母 **jellyfish**

潜水员 **diver**

直接地体验 **experience... first-hand**

让人大开眼界的 **eye-opening**

野生动物园 **safari park**

野生生物保护区 **wildlife reserve**

自然保护区 **nature reserve**

栖息地 **habitat**

了解野生生物 **learn about wildlife** (**wildlife** 是泛指野生动植物)

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

这个网址提供了英国各地区的自然保护区信息：[www.wildlifetrusts.org/wildlife/reserves](http://www.wildlifetrusts.org/wildlife/reserves)，沿着地图一路点击就可以看到你想了解的地区的 **nature reserve** 详情

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

泛指“海洋生物”，您不妨试试 **sea life / marine life** 这两种说法，它们会让考官紧皱着的眉头舒展开。

[剑桥例句] The children were amazed by the variety of **sea life**.



☆ 花园

难度指数：★★★☆☆



Pat 的答案

My favourite garden is the Classical Chinese Garden. It's just a short walk from where I live.

This garden is always a fun place to visit, and it's beautiful in every season.

In the spring, the leaves and grass in the garden turn green, and the flowers **bloom**. Everything feels so **fresh and energetic**. In the summer, the trees in the garden provide comfortable **shade** on hot days, and visitors can watch the fish play in the **lotus pond**.



Most of the trees there **change colours** in the autumn, which looks amazing. The garden feels good even in the winter because the snow on the trees and on the ground makes it **calm and peaceful**.

I like this garden because it makes me feel relaxed and happy. And the air in the garden is always fresh and clean. It's like **an oasis in the city**. It's also a great place to **learn about** trees and plants.

轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

► Tool Box

变成绿色 **turn green**

开花 **bloom**

充满生机和活力的 **fresh and energetic**

树荫 **shade**

莲花池 **lotus pond**

变颜色 **change colours**

安静祥和的 **calm and peaceful**

城市里的一片“绿洲” **an oasis in the city** (地道英文里常用这个短语来形容可以躲开城市里的各种喧闹拥挤的地方)



### 扩展词汇

欣赏 appreciate

botanical garden 植物园

很悠闲地走，散步 take a stroll

优雅的 elegant

挺拔的 tall and strong

(植物) 纤细的 slim

岩石 rock

溪流 stream

探索 explore

发现 discover

放松 unwind (请注意听音频里对它的读音)

这个网站提供了对伦敦的很多公园的介绍，而且网站上的图片用来考前放松也挺不错：[www.allinlondon.co.uk/park.php](http://www.allinlondon.co.uk/park.php)

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

### Pat 的海外生活英语实录

有很多中国同学问 Pat “亭子” 在英文里面叫什么。其实英美公园里的亭子并不是很多，而且即使有也远不如中国公园里面的亭子那么“惊艳” (breathtaking)。但只要您跟 native speakers 说 gazebo 这个词，他们就立刻能理解你是在说“亭子”了 😊。

[剑桥例句] The area surrounding the gazebo is a popular place for children.

常见植物英文名称 (如果想让答案更长，您当然还可以适当介绍一下自己在花园里最喜欢的植物，但不要太深入，因为毕竟这道题是考花园而不是考你最喜欢的植物，切记：扣题很重要)

tulip 郁金香

lily 百合

peony 牡丹

daisy 雏菊

daffodil 水仙花

orchid 兰花

sunflower 向日葵

carnation 康乃馨

oak tree 橡树

palm tree 棕榈树



willow 柳树

holly 冬青

pine tree 松柏

petunia 喇叭花

申加拿大学校的读者们今后可一定别忘了 check out the maple syrup, 超级好喝!

poinsettia 一品红, 很红很漂亮的一种花, 在英美 Christmas 的时候经常作装饰用

### 3. 动物

Describe an animal.

You should say:

what the animal is

where it can be found

what is special about it

and explain how people feel about it.



#### ☆ 野生动物之 大象

难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

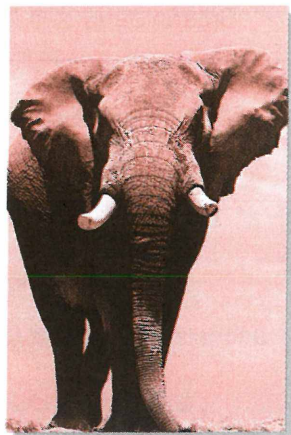
Pat 的答案

Elephants are fascinating creatures.

They are huge. African elephants can stand as tall as 4 meters. Actually, they are the largest **four-footed animals** in the world. But they are very gentle and slow-moving. They don't "**bully**" other animals.

Elephants use their **trunk** to "grab" food and use their **tusks** to dig for water.

They are **social animals**, and the mothers lead the whole family group.





People say that elephants never forget. **Trainers** can even train them to use simple tools. For thousands of years, elephants have been trained to carry heavy stuff and carry people through the **jungle**. They are like **hard-working employees** for their **owners**. But they ask for bananas instead of cash...

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

四足动物 **four-footed animals**

大象的鼻子 **trunk**

大象的牙齿 **tusks**

群居的动物 **social animals**

丛林 **jungle**

主人 **owner**

温和的 **gentle**

抓 **grab**

挖 **dig**

训练师 **trainer**

勤奋的员工 **hard-working employees**

现金 **cash**

### 扩展词汇

濒危物种 **endangered species**

象牙交易 **ivory trade**

野生动物园 **safari park**

偷猎 **poaching**

野生生物保护区 **wildlife reserve**

Britannica 的这个网址将会让您对各种野生动物有更深入的了解:

[www.britannica.com/topic-browse/Animals](http://www.britannica.com/topic-browse/Animals)

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

考到动物的话题，如果只是不停地说 **animals** 其实挺郁闷的。□ 试里绕开 **animals** 的好方法就是用 **creatures** 这个词，或者也可以说 **living creatures**。

[剑桥例句] Blue whales are the largest **creatures** ever to have lived.



☆ 野生动物之 狮子

难度指数：★★☆☆☆

Pat 的答案

Just like the tiger, the lion is also a member of the cat family and... in many ways lions are just big cats.

Humans have been so amazed by lions' size and **strength** that we call them **the king of beasts**. And a lion's **roar** can be heard up to 10 kilometers away.



Lions live in groups. Adult females **look after** their **cubs** together, **hunt** together and **defend** their hunting grounds together. But the males tend to be lazy, and some of them are actually **troublemakers**. Some cubs even get hurt by adult males when the adult females are away.

I like lions not really because they are strong, but because my girlfriend (for girls: boyfriend) is a **Leo**...

轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

► Tool Box

猫科动物 **the cat family**

力量 **strength**

兽中之王 **the king of beasts**

吼叫 **roar**

照看 **look after**

小狮子 / 小老虎 / 小熊等 **cub**

捕猎 **hunt**

保护 **defend**

制造麻烦者 **troublemaker**

狮子座 **Leo**





### 扩展词汇

狮群 **pride** (地道英文里一群狮子经常被叫作 a pride of lions, 可能跟雄狮看起来很“骄傲”有关 ☺)

星座 **sign**                      凶猛的 **fierce / ferocious**

猎物 **prey** (注意: 它是不可数的)

这个网站提供了英格兰和苏格兰各主要动物园的详细介绍:

[britishzoos.co.uk/](http://britishzoos.co.uk/)

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

### Pat 的海外生活英语实录

要表达“群居动物”, 除了可以说 **They live together.** 之外, 还有个很地道的说法: **social animals**。例如:

[剑桥例句] Lions are **social animals** that live in prides.

### ☆ 宠物之 鹦鹉

难度指数: ★★☆☆☆



#### Pat 的答案

Parrots have gorgeous **feathers** and a big **tail**.

They are good at copying human sounds. When you visit a pet shop, you'll probably find some parrots **repeating** "Hello! Hello!". And **parrot owners** often notice that their birds say words like "goodnight" and "snack" at the right moment.



Some parrots may even have the vocabulary of a two-year-old child.

Most of the time, parrots are very friendly. But be careful! Sometimes parrots do **attack** the people around them...



## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

非常漂亮的 gorgeous

羽毛 feathers

尾巴 tail

鹦鹉的主人 parrot owner

重复 repeat

攻击 attack

### 扩展词汇

可爱的 cute / adorable

烦人的 annoying

宠物的主人 owner

减少压力和孤独感 reduce stress and loneliness

耐心的 patient

责任感 a sense of responsibility

照看 look after

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

这个网址为您提供了对英国最常见鸟类的详尽介绍：

[birdsofbritain.co.uk/bird-guide/](http://birdsofbritain.co.uk/bird-guide/)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

要说某种事物很“烦人”，除了 It's annoying. 之外，**It really bothers me.** 也是英美生活里的常用说法之一。

[剑桥例句] The noise in this area **really bothers me.**

### Pat 指南



#### Describe an animal / pet you saw in your city.

在英美城市里见到最多的宠物永远都是 dogs，这个网站为“爱狗控”们提供了对各种狗狗最详尽的描述：[www.terrificpets.com/dog-breeds/](http://www.terrificpets.com/dog-breeds/)



## 4. 重要的植物

Describe an important plant in your country.

You should say:

what the plant is

what it looks like

whether you like it

and explain why it is important in your country.

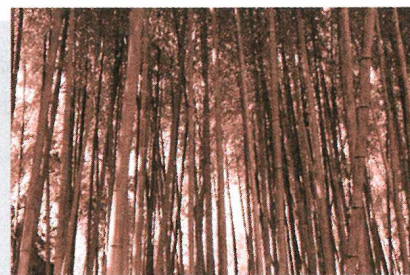


难度指数: ★★★☆☆

### Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about bamboo, which is one of the most important plants in China.

Bamboo is a kind of grass, but it can grow as tall as 30 meters — that's even taller than many trees. It grows very fast, like a couple of centimeters a day.



Another interesting thing about bamboo is although the bamboo **stem** is not thick, it's very strong.

It has been **a symbol of vitality** and **honesty** in the Chinese culture. It's also known as one of "The Three Friends of Winter" in China because it can survive cold winters.

Bamboo is also an important **economic plant**. Its use includes furniture making and building **construction**. It has contributed a lot to the Chinese economy.

And as you probably know, bamboo is the panda's **main source of food**. **Bamboo shoots** are also widely used in Chinese dishes. I love dishes that have bamboo shoots in them. They taste really good.



## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

## ► Tool Box

厘米 centimeter

茎 stem

是生机的象征 a symbol of vitality

诚实 honesty

经济植物 economic plant

建造 construction

主要的食物来源 main source of food

竹笋 bamboo shoot

## 扩展词汇

常青的 evergreen

直立的 upright

松 pine

梅 plum

清淡的味道 a mild flavor

备考时间充足的同学可以从这个网址看到对英国常见植物的详尽介绍：

[www.theenglishgarden.co.uk/plants/top-10-plants-2/](http://www.theenglishgarden.co.uk/plants/top-10-plants-2/)

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

Pat 注意到有很多中国的传统建筑外面会种竹子作为一种装饰。如果要用地道英文说“它可以成为很好的装饰”怎么说呢？native speakers 会说 **It makes a good decoration.** 这句话里的 make 不是制作，而是“可以成为”的意思。

[剑桥例句] The painting **makes a good decoration** in the living room.

## ☆ 野餐（双语感悟）

近期在亚太区常有一只卡片熊出没：

Describe a picnic / an outdoor meal.

而且这个答案如果说得比较有特色，就可以和另一道难题 Describe a special meal. 一起解决了，所以更值得关注。

Pat 发现有很多中国同学不太了解野餐（picnic）的常用英文表达，其实 native speakers 在说野餐时的用词并不“野”：



中文	地道英文表达
景色	scenery
家庭聚会	a family gathering
几家人一块儿聚餐（一般是每家都带些吃的，然后大家一起 share）	a potluck
公园里提供的野餐桌	picnic table
长椅	bench
小板凳儿	small stool
春天和秋天野餐时铺在地上的毯子（夏天则经常用 plaid sheet “格子布” 代替）	picnic blanket
铺开	spread out
背包	backpack
纸盘 / 纸杯	paper plate / paper cup
叉子	forks
刀	knife
勺子	spoons
装食品和餐具的篮子（在国外野餐时是必需的，考官听到会觉得很亲切）	picnic basket
烧烤（注意：barbecue 既可以做名词也可以做动词）	have a barbecue
烧烤用的原料	barbecue ingredients（常见的例如 chicken, lamb, shrimp 等）
烧烤的（后面加上肉类或者海鲜就行了）	grilled / barbecued（chicken, shrimp, salmon...）
调味酱	sauce
沙拉	salad
甜点（注意：它的发音和沙漠 desert 可不一样）	dessert（比如 cakes 和 biscuits）
水果	fruit（比如 strawberries 和 grapes）
瓶装水	bottled water
果汁	juice
垃圾袋	garbage bag
拍照片	take photos（过去时是 took photos）
玩游戏	play games
一次令人难忘的经历	a memorable experience
再加上你对于看到的景色和对自己感受的描述，早就够了……	



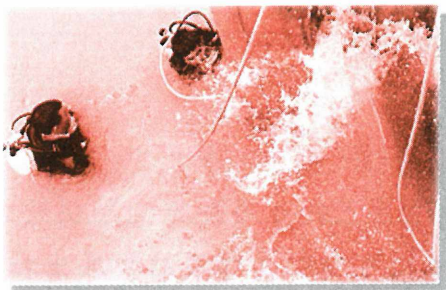
## D 休闲娱乐

### Pat 解题

很多同学在出国之前，都爱幻想 (fantasise) 国外是不是比中国更好玩。

这个嘛……得看您喜欢什么了：

如果您喜欢 sports 和 outdoor activities，那就绝对应该出国，因为选择实在太多了。连 golfing 这样国内的“贵族运动” (high-class sports)，在英美也只不过是大众运动 (popular sports)，价格并不贵 (not very pricey)。



但如果您既不喜欢 sports，也不喜欢 outdoor activities，甚至都不喜欢 going to the cinema，那么真有可能会觉得国外的生活挺单调的。西方人最喜欢的休闲活动除了 sports，基本上就是 hiking, fishing, camping, going to the cinema, clubbing, bar-hopping... 甚至连“看人” (people-watching) 和“看鸟儿” (bird-watching) 在英美都算休闲活动。至于“洗脚城” (foot massage parlors) 在国外则少之又少，而卡拉 OK (karaoke) 也没有像国内这么“火” (“in”)。



到底哪种娱乐更好玩儿？那只能说是“萝卜白菜，各有所爱”了 (Different strokes for different folks. ) 😊。

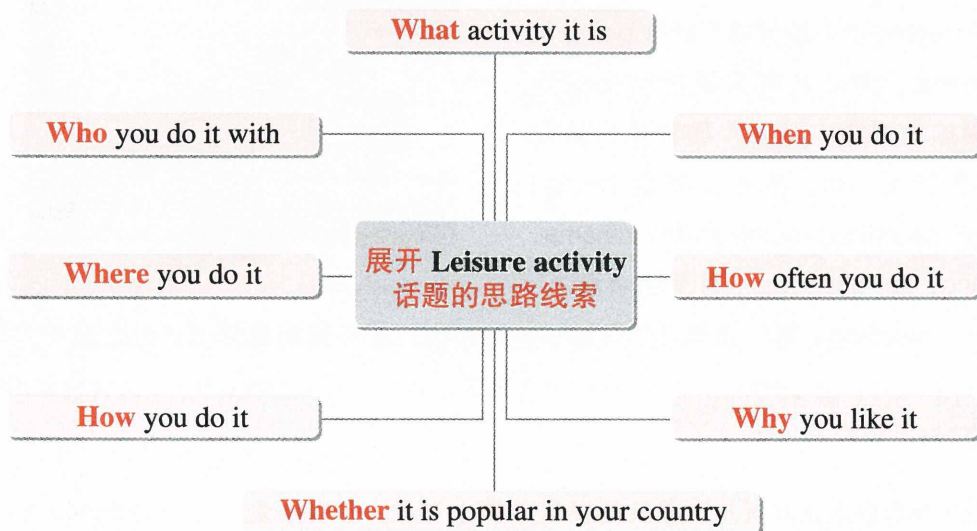


## 本类话题最有代表性的真题 Typical Topics

- \* Describe a childhood game.
- \* Describe an outdoor activity.
- \* Describe your favourite sport.
- \* Describe a TV programme that you like / dislike.
- \* Describe a foreign country you wish to travel to.

## 展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Map

(如果卡片上的4个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案, 那么下面的思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)





## 分级演示 Sample Answers

### 1. 童年时的游戏

Describe a game you enjoyed as a child.

You should say:

where you played this game

who you played it with

how it was played

and explain why you liked it.



#### ☆ 游戏之 捉迷藏

难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

#### Pat 的答案

I often played **hide-and-seek** as a child. We usually played this game in a park or in a building with lots of rooms.

The game was like this: one of us, called the “seeker”, searched around for the “hiders”. The game started with the seeker covering his or her eyes and **counting** to 100, while everyone else **ran away** and found a place to hide.

After the counting was finished, the seeker opened his or her eyes and started searching for the hiders. And that was my favourite part of the game. The hiders tried their best to **keep quiet**. But then, there was always someone who got caught, and this person would be the next seeker.



I really enjoyed this game because it was **simple but exciting**, and it helped us **stay active**. These days, my friends and I have fun by sitting around and playing



computer games, which can be unhealthy. Sometimes I really miss the simple fun of playing hide-and-seek.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

搜寻 search for...

躲起来 hide

数数字 count

保持安静 keep quiet

被抓到 get caught

保持活跃的, 保持身体经常运动的 stay active

简单但是令人兴奋的 simple but exciting

简单的乐趣 the simple fun of...



### 扩展词汇

拔河 tug-of-war

追人 play tag

跑来跑去 run around

跳格子 hopscotch

提高孩子的平衡和协调能力 improve children's balance and coordination

在学校的操场上 on the school playground

在公园里 in a park

玩弹子球 play marbles

充满了悬念 is full of suspense

棋类游戏 board games

打败对方 defeat the other player

牌类游戏 card games

有趣而且令人愉快的 fun and enjoyable

玩得特别开心 have a great time / have a blast

团队精神 team spirit

和队友们紧密合作 work closely with their teammates

这个网站提供了对很多儿童游戏的描述, 有时间的同学在集体追忆“少年时代”的同时, 也可以对比一下中国小朋友和英语国家儿童们的游戏有哪些异同: [www.activityvillage.co.uk/all-games-a-z](http://www.activityvillage.co.uk/all-games-a-z)

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

小朋友玩户外游戏除了“好玩儿”(fun)之外,另一个重要的作用是可以锻炼孩子们的社会交往能力 **social skills**。

[剑桥例句] There're many online games that can help children improve their **social skills**.

## 2. 最喜欢的运动

### ☆ 最喜欢的运动之游泳

Describe your favourite sport.

You should say:

when you started this sport

how you learned to do it

whether you can do it well

and explain why you like it.



难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

男生女生都可以说的常见运动的应该就是 swimming, 而且描述游泳益处的词汇和短语也完全可以自然地用到很多其它运动上面。

### Pat 的答案

My favourite sport is swimming.

I learned to swim when I was 8. My **instructor** was very **patient** and helpful. At first, I couldn't swim at all. I was even afraid of the water. My instructor told me to relax and **concentrate**. He showed me patiently how to move my arms and kick my legs. Little by little, I began to feel comfortable in the water. Then he taught me how to **control my breathing**. It took me a lot of practice to learn to **breathe properly**. But by the end of the swimming course, I'd become very **confident** in my swimming



skills.

Now I'm a pretty good swimmer, and I go swimming every weekend. It helps me **keep fit** and improves my **strength and balance**. It's also a good way to relax and **reduce stress**. And I've made many friends at our local swimming center.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

游泳教练 **swimming instructor**

耐心的 **patient**

集中注意力 **concentrate**

调节呼吸的节奏 **control my breathing**

适当地换气 **breathe properly**

自信的 **confident**

保持身强体健 **keep fit**

力量和平衡能力 **strength and balance**

减轻压力, “减压” **reduce stress**



### 扩展词汇

完全不会游泳 **swim like a brick**

浮板 **kickboard**

很擅长游泳 **swim like a fish**

树立自信 **build self-confidence**

泳镜 **goggles**

蛙泳 **breast-stroke**

仰泳 **back-stroke**

蝶泳 **butterfly-stroke**

自由式 **freestyle**

潜水 **dive**

增强肌肉 **build muscles**

提高我的耐力 **boost my endurance**

改善我的协调能力 **improve my coordination**

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

如果有空, 您还可以看看权威的 Britannica 怎样介绍常见的极限运动 (extreme sports): [www.britannica.com/sports/extreme-sports](http://www.britannica.com/sports/extreme-sports), 如果还觉得不够“刺激”, 那么还可以再访问这个网站 [www.buzzle.com/articles/list-of-extreme-sports.html](http://www.buzzle.com/articles/list-of-extreme-sports.html), 它对最常见的极限运动都给出了详尽的解释。



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

在 IELTS 口试里，谈到体育运动时往往会说到一项运动很“耗费体力的”，地道英文里有个常用词叫 **strenuous**，是个拿分效果明显的表达：

[剑桥例句] Hannah's doctor advised her not to take any **strenuous** exercise.

### 3. 有趣的新闻

#### ☆ 一条有趣的新闻之 银行劫匪

Describe a piece of interesting news.

You should say:

when you heard the news

how you heard the news

who the news was about

and explain how you felt after you heard the news.



难度指数：★★☆☆☆

如果你明白考官真正需要的其实只是一个扣题 (to-the-point)、自然 (natural-sounding)、清晰 (direct and clear) 的描述，就不应该让自己的答案里面充斥着大词和长难句，因为那样的答案不仅听起来会让 native speakers 费解，而且也 and 考官的期待背道而驰 (run counter to what they expect)。

#### Pat 的答案

Let me share with you a piece of interesting news I heard on TV last weekend.

Last Friday afternoon, a man went into a bank in New York and tried to **rob** it. He was probably not a bad person. He wanted to rob the bank because he had lost his job, and then he lost his house and his car. The only thing he had was **debt**. So he decided to rob the bank and get some money.



"Fill the bag up?.. With what?!"



What made the news interesting was that he didn't have a gun. So this guy just took a banana and put it in his pocket. He thought that could **fool** the **bank tellers**.

He entered the bank, walked up to a teller, told her he had a gun and asked her to give him some **cash**. Of course the police came. This guy got so **scared** that he pulled out his "gun", I mean, his banana...

The news was interesting. But actually it was a sad story. These days, many people have lost their jobs because of the economy. I feel sorry for them.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

抢劫 **rob**

债务 **debt**

愚弄 **fool (v.)**

银行柜员 **bank teller**

现金 **cash**

害怕的 **scared**

面具 **mask**

### 扩展词汇

新闻播音员 **news presenter / anchor**

可靠的 **reliable**

轰动的 **sensational**

发人深思的 **thought-provoking**

如果您对英语新闻有深入的兴趣，看 CNN 的官网当然是个好选择：**www.cnn.com**。如果您现在直接看 CNN 常规版还感觉吃力，那么也可以试试 CNN 的学生版：**www.cnn.com/studentnews/**，这个网站对于适应出国之后每天都要看、听英语新闻的生活是个不错的“试水”阶段。

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

在地道英文里，fun 作形容词时是“有趣的”，而 funny 则是“搞笑的”。但如果您要说一件事情是“超级搞笑的”，请用 **hilarious** 这个形容词。考官听到这个词虽然出于职业准则不会放声大笑，但却会因为你的用词准确而会心地微笑。



## 4. 电视节目

Describe a TV programme you like.

You should say:

what kind of programme it is

what it is like

whether it is popular

and explain why you like it.



### ☆ 电视节目之 家庭滑稽录像

难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

#### Pat 的答案

My favourite TV show is *America's Funniest Home Videos*. It's a very popular **reality show**.

The show is like ... people send in their funny **homemade videos**. Then the **host** plays the videos on a large screen and **makes comments** on the videos.

Many of the videos show **funny moments** at weddings or parties. Some people also send in videos showing the **hilarious** mistakes made by their young children. Sometimes the videos are organised around popular **themes**, such as pets, birthdays or vacations.

I like this show because the host has **a great sense of humor**. He keeps the **viewers** laughing throughout the show. I like the show also because it's all about family life and ordinary people. I guess that's why it **attracts** so many viewers.





## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

真人秀 reality show

家庭录像 homemade video

主持人 host

评论 make comments

有趣的瞬间 funny moments

超级搞笑的 hilarious

围绕……组织起来 are organised around... 主题 theme

很强的幽默感 a great sense of humour 收看节目的人们 viewers

吸引 attract

### 扩展词汇

竞赛节目 game show

有才华的 talented

参加竞赛节目的选手 contestants

说话很机敏的 witty

奖品 prize

综艺节目 variety show

极限挑战 Go Fighting

问答节目 quiz show

选秀类节目 talent show

厨艺节目 cookery show

旅游节目 travel show

相亲节目 blind date show

嘉宾 guests

科学类真人秀 scientific reality show

获得好评 receive good reviews

是街谈巷议的话题 is the talk of the town

很有争议性的节目 a controversial show

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

时间充裕的同学可以在 [www.thisisinsider.com/jeopardy-interesting-facts-2018-7](http://www.thisisinsider.com/jeopardy-interesting-facts-2018-7) 这个网址看到对著名的问答节目 Jeopardy 的详细介绍。

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

说电视节目或者广播节目“引人入胜的”，国内同学们一般会想到 interesting 或者 attractive，其实最准确的应该是 engaging 这个词。

[剑桥例句] A good radio show is always engaging.



## Time to Branch Out.

### 推而广之

Describe a radio programme.

描述一个广播节目

### 补充词汇和短语

talk show 聊天节目

interviews 访谈

live phone calls 由观众现场打进的电话

join the discussion (听众) 参与讨论

lively conversations 气氛很活跃的谈话

attract many listeners 吸引大量的听众

receive good reviews 获得很好的评价

weather information 天气信息

informative 信息大的

educational 很有知识性的

have a good sense of humor (主持人) 很有幽默感

a panel of guests 嘉宾团队

call-in show 观众打电话参与的节目

broadcast 播放

traffic information 交通信息

entertaining 娱乐性强的

IELTS 口试有时会考 **Describe a time when you received something free, such as a free gift, a free meal or a free film.**。就像在国内一样，在英美也常有邀请听众 (listeners) 或者观众 (viewers) 打进电话的节目 (call-in show)。听众或者观众可以参与讨论 (join the discussion)，发表自己的看法 (share their own opinions) 或者参加有奖竞猜 (quiz game / quiz contest)，回答一些很有趣的问题 (answer some interesting questions)，然后就可以获得免费的礼品卡 (free gift cards)、电影票 (free film tickets)、演唱会门票 (free concert tickets) 等等。当然，您也可以选择直接说自己参加了一次幸运抽奖 (entered a lucky draw)，并且赢得了免费奖品 (won a free prize)，只是这样说的答案相对会短一些 😊



## ☆ 电视节目之 选秀节目

《声入人心》等各种歌手选秀节目 (singing talent shows) 在中国引起了很多关注, 这让 Pat 想到了正在美国大行其道的歌手选秀节目——The Voice。您不妨比较一下东西方歌手选秀类节目的形式 (format) 到底有哪些异同:

### Pat 的答案



I'd like to talk about a popular **singing talent show** called "The Voice". It has three stages of competition: the **blind auditions**, the **battles**, and the **live shows**.

Only people with real singing talent are invited to the blind auditions, — the **coaches** can hear the singers perform, but they can't see the singers because they sit with their back to the singers. If a coach is impressed by a singer's voice, he or she pushes a button to select the singer for his or her team. Then the coach's chair turns around to face the singer.

Once the teams are formed, the battle is on. In this stage, the coaches focus on developing their singers' singing skills. They also have two of their team members **compete against each other**. Then the coaches decide which singers can get to the next stage. At the end of the battles, only the strongest members of each team go on to the live shows.

During the live shows, the top singers from each team compete against each other. The audience can **vote** to save their favourite singer. In the end, each team has only one member left to compete against the other teams. The winner of this final competition is then named "The Voice" and receives the prize of **a recording contract**.



I like this show because the singers are really **talented**, and they put in a lot of hard work to improve their singing skills. And their coaches also work very hard to help them improve. Watching this show is both relaxing and **inspiring**. That's why it **attracts** so many viewers.



## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

## ► Tool Box

歌手选秀类节目	singing talent show	阶段	stage
盲选	the blind auditions	组内大战	the battles
现场对决	the live shows	导师	coach
表演	perform	按钮	button
挑选	select	竞争	compete (动词) / competition (名词)
观众	audience	投票	vote
唱片合同	a recording contract	有才华的	talented
励志的	inspiring	吸引	attract

## 扩展词汇

激烈的竞争	fierce competition	出局, 被淘汰	is eliminated
很有回报的经历	a rewarding experience		
值得回忆的经历	a memorable experience		
有趣而且令人愉快的	fun and enjoyable		

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

厨艺节目 (cookery shows) 是在中英两国都很流行的一类电视节目。这个网站是英国著名的“电视食神” (celebrity TV chef) Jamie Oliver 的官网: [www.jamieoliver.com](http://www.jamieoliver.com)。他最擅长的就是用很简单的原料做出又好吃又健康的食品 (cook tasty and healthy food with simple ingredients), 即使你没学会那些 recipes (菜的做法), 至少也能够对英国人喜欢的厨艺节目风格有更深入的了解 ☺

## ☆ 电视系列剧之 生活大爆炸

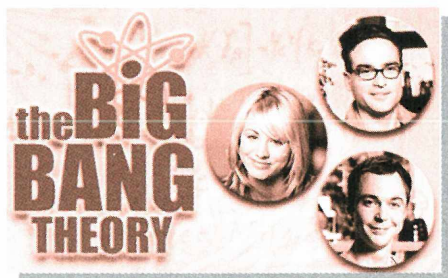
难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a **sitcom** I like, called *The Big Bang Theory*.







The two main **characters** of this sitcom are Leonard and Sheldon. Both of them are Caltech **physicists** and they share an apartment. Leonard has an IQ of 173 but has no problem communicating with the “average” people. Sheldon is even more **intelligent**, with an IQ of 187. But he really lacks **social skills** and often

finds it hard to **interact with** the “ordinary” people.

Penny, their next-door neighbor, is a waitress who **dreams of** being an actress. Leonard **has a crush on** her, but they just seem to be completely different people. So Penny starts to show the two **geniuses** what “real life” is all about.

I like this sitcom because it's **hilarious**. Every **episode** keeps me laughing **non-stop**. And many of the conversations in this sitcom are not only funny but also very **witty**. I have **recommended** it to many friends of mine.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

情景喜剧 **sitcom**

主要的 **main**

影视剧中的角色 **character**

加州理工 **Caltech** (The California Institute of Technology, 美国的顶级牛校, 去年该校物理专业的排名全美第一)

物理学家 **physicist**

聪明的 **intelligent**

缺乏 **lack**

社会交往的技能 **social skills**

与……沟通 **communicate with**

与……交流 **interact with**

梦想做某事 **dream of doing sth.**

暗恋某人 **have a crush on someone** (如果不明白这个短语的意思在 Facebook 上就是标准的“土人”)

天才 **genius**

超级搞笑的 **hilarious**



机智的 witty

不停地 non-stop

### 扩展词汇

书呆子 nerd

娱乐性很强的 entertaining

美国众神 *American Gods*

绝命毒师 *Breaking Bad*

罪恶黑名单 *The Blacklist*

权力的游戏 *Game of Thrones*

大小谎言 *Big Little Lies*

特工卡特 *Agent Carter*

绝望主妇 *Desperate Housewives*

无耻之徒 *Shameless*

反恐特警组 *S. W. A. T.*

摩登家庭 *Modern Family*

魔术师 *The Magicians*

广告狂人 *Mad Men*

吸血鬼日记 *The Vampire Diaries*

丛林中的莫扎特 *Mozart in the Jungle*

尼基塔 *Nikita*

逍遥法外 *How to Get Away with Murder*

美少女的谎言 *Pretty Little Liars*

行尸走肉 *The Walking Dead*

(电视系列剧的) 一集 an episode

推荐 recommend

电视系列剧 TV series

(电视系列剧的) 一季 a season

双峰 *Twin Peaks*

逍遥法外 *How to Get Away with Murder*

实习生格蕾 *Grey's Anatomy*

王冠 *The Crown*

心灵猎人 *Mindhunter*

纸牌屋 *House of Cards*

国土安全 *Homeland*

海军罪案调查处 *NCIS*

英雄 *Heroes*

绯闻女孩 *Gossip Girl*

女子监狱 *Orange Is the New Black*

迷失 *Lost*

闪电侠 *The Flash*

杰西卡·琼斯 *Jessica Jones*

办公室 *The Office*

罪恶黑名单 *The Blacklist*

时间充裕的同学还可以在这个网址看到英美观众最喜爱的经典系列剧介绍: [www.imdb.com/chart/toptv/?ref\\_=nv\\_tp\\_tv250\\_2](http://www.imdb.com/chart/toptv/?ref_=nv_tp_tv250_2)

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

《生活大爆炸》里的故事发生在加利福尼亚 (California), 它是以文化多样性 (cultural diversity) 而著称的一个州, 所以我们在《生活大爆炸》里也看到了华裔演员 Melissa Tang 的身影。

[剑桥例句] Manchester is well-known for its cultural diversity.

### ☆ 喜欢的动漫系列剧之 海贼王

难度指数: ★★★★★

#### Pat 的答案

Let me talk about *One Piece*.

The main character of this anime series, Luffy, is the leader of the Straw Hat Pirates. He and his crew sail the seas in search of the treasure called "One Piece", which can help him become the next King of the Pirates.



Luffy is unstoppable not only because he can gain superhuman abilities by eating the "devil fruit", but also because his crew members are very helpful. Together, they defeat strong enemies such as Crocodile and Rob Lucci.

The action in *One Piece* is fast-paced and exciting. But *One Piece* is not just about fighting. It's also about friendship, teamwork and ambition.

In other anime series, it's always like... the main character does everything. But in *One Piece*, the crew members, like Zoro, Sanji, Nami, Robin, Usopp and Chopper, are all COOL, which makes the team extremely powerful.

*One Piece* is a very long series, but it's not boring at all, because it really makes me think and inspires me a lot. That's why I'm a huge fan of OP.





## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

影视剧里的人物	character	日本动漫	anime
日本漫画	manga	系列剧	series
船员（或者机组成员）的统称	crew members		
海盗	pirate	在海面上长时间地航行（固定短语）	sail the seas
超人类的能力	superhuman abilities	恶魔果实	devil fruit
打败	defeat	敌人	enemy
快节奏的	fast-paced	强大的	powerful
友情	friendship	团队合作	teamwork
志向，抱负	ambition	激励	inspire

### 扩展词汇

正面人物	hero（复数：heroes）	“反派”	villain（复数：villains）
尾田荣一郎	Eiichiro Oda	创作者	creator
妖精的尾巴	Fairy Tail	家庭教师	(Hitman) Reborn!
通灵王	Shaman King		
七龙珠	Dragon Ball Z（在英美有时被简称为 DBZ）		
火影忍者	Naruto	银魂	Gin Tama
周刊少年	Jump Weekly Shōnen Jump	死神	Bleach
犬夜叉	InuYasha	叛逆的鲁鲁修	Code Geass

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

您还可以在这个网址看到对很多经典日本动漫的详细介绍，特别是每个介绍里的 Storyline 部分会对你很有帮助：[www.imdb.com/list/ls054666938/](http://www.imdb.com/list/ls054666938/)



## 5. 电影

Describe a film that you enjoyed watching.

You should say:

what the film was called

what type of film it was

what it was about

and explain why you enjoyed the film.

### ☆ 童年时看过的电影之 狮子王

难度指数：★★★★☆☆



真“狮”版的 Simba 虽然也很萌，但卡通版的萌度明显高了几个等级 (is much more adorable)。

#### Pat 的答案

I first watched *The Lion King* as a young child, and then watched it again several times over the years.

This animated film is about a lion prince named Simba, whose uncle kills Simba's father and makes himself the ruler. But Simba is held responsible for the death of his father. So he runs away out of guilt.

Many years later, Simba is told that the kingdom is in serious trouble. So he faces up to the challenge and returns. With the help of his friends, he defeats his uncle and saves the kingdom.



I like this film because most of the characters are very cute, and the soundtrack to the film is amazing. I particularly like the song "Can You Feel the Love Tonight." by Elton John.

The film also teaches valuable life lessons. For



example, it teaches us that running away doesn't solve any problems. It also shows us the power of **courage** and friendship.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

动画片 **animated film / animation**

王子 **prince**

统治者 **ruler**

让某人负责任 **hold sb. responsible**

因为愧疚而躲开 **run away out of guilt**

王国 **kingdom**

勇敢地面对挑战 **face up to the challenge** 打败 **defeat**

电影原声专辑 **soundtrack**

尤其喜欢 **particularly like**

宝贵的 **valuable**

勇气 **courage**

友情 **friendship**



### 扩展词汇

剧情 **plot / storyline**

小狮子 (小老虎、小熊等) **cub**

票房成功的电影, 上座率很高的电影 **a box office hit / a box office smash**

小小兵, “小黄人儿” **Minions**

功夫熊猫 **Kung Fu Panda**

很励志的 **inspiring**

续集 **sequel**

冰川时代 **Ice Age**

蓝精灵 **Smurfs**

格格巫 **Gargamel**

阿兹猫 **cat Azrael**

灰姑娘 **Cinderella**

童话 **fairytale**

不能只看外表, 不能以貌取人 **Don't judge a book by its cover.**

三维立体电影 **a 3-D (它的读音就是 three-D) film**

无论你是想了解怎样用英文描述剧情, 还是想看英美观众对于一部电影的评论, 这个“电影大全”都必不可少: **www.imdb.com**

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

美版的卡通片 (animation) 与日版的卡通片 (anime) 不同, 美版不论故事情节是什么, 一定会有一两个可爱的卡通形象出现在电影里, 但日系的则不一定。“可爱的”除了 cute 之外, **adorable** 也是 native speakers 形容小朋友、小动物或者卡通人物很可爱的一个常用词。

[剑桥例句] Theo is an absolutely **adorable** child.

## ☆ 电影之 流浪地球

《流浪地球》不仅有壮观的特效 (spectacular special effects), 而且这部科幻电影里的很多情节是有一定科学依据的, 不只是单纯的想象, 这也是有工程师背景的刘慈欣的科幻小说的优点。同时《流浪地球》还引入了一些有中国特色的幽默元素 (例如刘启的小名叫“户口”), 所以这部电影不只是“大片儿”, 在细节上也值得称赞 (should also be praised for its attention to detail)。

难度指数: ★★★★★



## Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about the **sci-fi blockbuster** *The Wandering Earth*, which is based on **a novel of the same title**.

The film is set in the future when the sun is dying and the United Earth Government decides that the only solution is to move the earth to a new star system. An **astronaut** named Liu Peiqiang is sent to a space station with the task of helping the earth **navigate its way through the solar system**. Before leaving the earth, he promises his son, Liu Qi, that he will return after his mission.

Seventeen years later, Liu Qi has become a **rebellious** young man who blames



his mother's death on a decision made by his father. When Liu Peiqiang **is due to** complete his mission and return to the earth, Liu Qi and his sister escape from their underground city, steal a truck and start driving around.



But as the earth passes by **Jupiter**, it is dragged into Jupiter's **gravity well** and is going to **crash into** Jupiter. Liu Qi suggests to a **rescue team** that they can push the earth away from Jupiter by **igniting** Jupiter's **atmosphere**.

The team accepts his suggestion but fails to ignite Jupiter's atmosphere, so they call the space station for help. Liu Peiqiang promises to help. Then he flies the space station into a cloud between the earth and Jupiter, **sacrifices his own life** and ignites Jupiter's atmosphere. The earth is saved and continues its journey to a new star system.

I like this film because it has **a well-written plot** and **spectacular special effects**. The main characters are also **well-acted**, and I have learned many **scientific facts** about the solar system from the film.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

科幻	sci-fi / science fiction	大片	blockbuster
基于	is based on	同名小说	a novel of the same title
宇航员	astronaut	寻找穿过……的路径	navigate its way through ...
太阳系	the solar system	叛逆的	rebellious
到了应该……的时间	is due to ...	木星	Jupiter
天体周围的引力井	gravity well	撞入	crash into
救援队	rescue team	点燃	ignite
大气层	atmosphere	牺牲了自己的生命	sacrifices his own life
优质的剧情	a well-written plot	壮观的特效	spectacular special effects
表演得很出色的	well-acted	科学事实	scientific facts



### 扩展词汇

恒星	star	行星	planet
星系	galaxy	宇宙	the universe

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说



太空探索	space exploration	太空服	space suit
头盔	helmet	人类文明	the human civilization
未来的世代	future generations	可持续发展	sustainable development
人工智能	artificial intelligence / AI	外星人	aliens
入侵者	invaders	电影剧本	film script/screenplay
巨大的票房成功	a huge box-office hit	受到很高的评价	receive great reviews
搞笑片	comedy / funny movie	超级搞笑的	hilarious
爱情喜剧	romantic comedy	动作片	action film
充满紧张的动作场面	full of action scenes	特效	special effects
看起来很真实的	realistic	娱乐性很强的	entertaining
历史片	historical drama	穿越剧	time-travel drama
战争片	war film	传记片	biopic
纪录片	documentary		
自然纪录片	nature documentary, 例如: 《我们诞生在中国》(Born in China)		
自然栖息地	natural habitat	野生生物	wildlife
励志的	inspiring	令人难忘的	unforgettable
奇幻电影 (像 Harry Potter 和 The Lord of the Rings 那种)	fantasy movie		
恐怖片	horror film	悬念片	suspense film
贺岁片	New Year celebration film		
很有喜庆气氛的	festive (festival 的形容词形式)		
电影的预告短片	trailer		
强大的演员阵容	a strong cast (cast 就是 “演员阵容”)		

Pat 的英美朋友们最喜欢的电影评论网站就是 [www.rottentomatoes.com/top/](http://www.rottentomatoes.com/top/), 您可以在这里找到各种英美电影的 detailed reviews



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

《流浪地球》不仅有很强的视觉冲击力 (spectacular visual effects), 而且还可以让我们获得很多关于恒星 (stars) 和行星 (planets) 的知识。native speakers 在说一部电影、一个电视节目或者一本书很有知识性的时候会用 educational 这个形容词。

[剑桥例句] This film is not only entertaining but also educational.

### ☆ 电影之 后来的我们

作为典型的“北漂片”，在编剧和表演两方面《后来的我们》其实都并没有太大的突破。但是因为电影讲述的方式清晰自然，所以作为刘若英第一次执导的电影还是值得称赞的。

这也正像 IELTS 口语考官们常说的: “It's not what you say. It's how you say it.” 即使是平淡的话题，只要考生的思路清晰而且语言地道，同样也能达到 IELTS 口试高分的标准。

难度指数: ★★★★★

Pat 的答案



I'm going to talk about a film that I like, called “Us and Them”.

It tells the story of two young strangers who meet by chance on a train during the Spring Festival travel rush. They find out that they're from the same town and both of them struggle to make a living in Beijing where the cost of living is very high. They become good friends and then fall in love, but break up because they have different goals in life. Ten years later, they meet by chance again on a flight. Looking back, they feel they could have done more for their relationship.

The director of the film, Rene Liu, is a multi-talented lady. She used to be a successful singer and actress. Now she has made a film that has earned more than 1 billion yuan at the box office.

Most of the film was shot in winter in Hailar, one of the coldest places in China. I admire the cast and crew because they didn't let the extreme





could stop them **pursuing their dream** of making a good film.

I also like **the theme song** by Eason Chan. It's a beautiful song with **moving lyrics** and music.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

偶遇 **meet by chance**

春运 **the Spring Festival travel rush / the Chinese New Year travel rush**

勉强维持生活 **struggle to make a living**

生活费用 **the cost of living**

分手 **break up**

有不同的人生目标 **have different goals in life**

恋情 **relationship** (同学们都知道 **relationship** 是关系的意思, 而在地道英文里当谈到情侣之间的 **relationship**, 就是指恋情)

刘若英 **Rene Liu**

多才多艺的 **multi-talented**

曾经是 **used to be**

票房 **the box office**

(电影) 在……拍摄 **(a film) was shot in ...**

地道英文里对一部电影的全体演员和剧组的总称 **the cast and crew**

追寻他们的梦想 **pursue their dream**

主题歌 **the theme song**

陈奕迅 **Eason Chan**

感人的 **moving / touching**

歌词 **lyrics**

### 扩展词汇

剧情 **plot / storyline**

爱情电影 **a romance film**

低成本电影 **a small-budget film**

票房很成功的电影 **a box office hit / a box office smash**

是由……执导的 **was directed by...**

是由……扮演的 **was played by...**

海报 **posters**

勤奋敬业的 **hardworking and dedicated**

访谈 **interview**

名人 **celebrity**

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



家喻户晓的名字 a household name

这个网址可以说是英美影星介绍大全：[www.biography.com/people/groups/actors-and-actresses-film-actor-and-film-actress](http://www.biography.com/people/groups/actors-and-actresses-film-actor-and-film-actress) 例如，点击页面右上角的放大镜，然后在搜索框里填入 Chris Hemsworth，您就可以看到对“雷神”（Thor）扮演者的详细介绍

### Pat 的海外生活英语实录

会唱，会演又会导，刘若英无疑是多才多艺的，而 multi-talented 就是“多才多艺的”对应的英文表达。

[剑桥例句] Vanessa is a multi-talented lady who is a successful painter, photographer and fashion designer.

## 6. 歌曲之 加州明信片

Describe a song or a piece of music you like.

You should say:

what the song or piece of music is called

when you first heard it

where you first heard it

and explain why you like it.



难度指数：★★★★☆☆

### Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a song I like, called *Picture Postcards from LA*. I first heard this song at a friend's home last month. Of course, LA stands for Los





Angeles, the city where Hollywood is.

The **lyrics** of this song are about the singer himself and a **waitress** named Rachael. Rachael always dreams of becoming a superstar in Hollywood. And she often tells the singer about her dream. The singer is always like, " Sure, so send

me picture postcards from LA. "

I like this song because it's about **ordinary people** and their simple lives. Both of them know this dream probably will never come true, but they're still happy and hopeful about the future. So it's a moving story.

I like this song also because the singer, Joshua Kadison, has a **unique** voice — a very **deep and rich** voice. The music of this song also makes me feel very calm and relaxed.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

是……的缩写 **stand for**

洛杉矶 **Los Angeles**

餐馆的女服务生 **waitress**

歌词 **lyrics**

[剑桥例句] The **lyrics** of this song are very moving.

……说 **he's like, "..."** / **she's like, "..."** (在英美日常生活里转述某人的话时很常用)

普通人 **ordinary people**

感人的 **moving**

独特的 **unique**

低沉浑厚的嗓音 **a deep and rich voice**

### 扩展词汇

给人印象深刻的, 很容易记住的 **very memorable**

很励志的 **inspiring**

舒缓的 **slow and soothing**

很有活力的 **lively and energetic**

欢快的 **happy and energetic**

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



很有激情的 is full of passion      很有表现力的 very expressive

(歌词) 寓意丰富的 very meaningful      (歌词) 简单明了的 simple and straightforward

节拍 tempo      旋律 rhythm      纯净自然的声音 a pure and natural voice

喜欢英美音乐的朋友只要在这个网页的 search box 里输入你要找的歌名和 review 这个单词, 就能够找到相关的乐评了: [www.nme.com/search](http://www.nme.com/search)

Part 2 有时还会偷偷地把上面这个卡片题变形: Describe a song you liked as a child. 这个网站提供了世界各地的大量儿歌: [www.mamalisa.com](http://www.mamalisa.com), 您按照国家找到 China 就可以看到中国的儿歌了, 从“小燕子”到“两只老虎”都有

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

Pat 有时会在线收听来自国内的音乐节目。现在很流行说一位歌手的表演 (performance) 很“给力”, 那么用地道英文怎么表达呢? native speakers 会说: It's phenomenal. (phenomenal /fə'nomɪnəl/ 这个词貌似很书面, 其实在当代英美日常口语里的使用已经相当普及)。另外, 国内影视圈最近流行说的“现象级电视节目”, 其实就是 a phenomenal TV show 的对应表达。

## 7. 广告

Describe an interesting advertisement you have seen.

You should say:

when you first saw it

where you first saw it

what it was like

and explain why it was interesting.



难度指数: ★★☆☆☆



Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about an interesting **commercial** I saw on TV last weekend.

It was like... a man rushes to the airport, **hops** on a plane and flies to another city for a job interview.



After arriving at an office building, he gets into a **lift** and goes up to the 20th floor, looking very nervous. He looks down at his shoes, only to notice that they don't match each other. But he goes in for the interview anyway.

The man looks sad after the interview. But all of a sudden, his mobile phone rings — he gets the job. He's so excited that he jumps into the air. Then **the narrator** says calmly, "Converse can always take you there."

This TV commercial was interesting because it was very **creative**, and the message was clear and **powerful**.

轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

► Tool Box

在电视或者广播上面播出的广告 **commercial**

跳 **hop**

电梯 **lift** (英式英语) / **elevator** (美式英语)

旁白 **narrator**

匡威 **Converse**

广告要传达的信息 **message**

清晰而且有说服力的 **clear and powerful**

扩展词汇

宣传海报 **poster**

广告传单 **flyer**

很有效的 **effective**

拍摄得非常美的 **beautifully-shot**



可靠的 reliable      推销新产品 promote new products

吸引人们的注意力 attract people's attention

很容易记住的广告词 a memorable slogan / a catchy slogan

有趣并且令人愉快的 fun and enjoyable

如果你觉得看有创意的广告是一种享受，那就不妨看看这个网站：  
[www.boredpanda.com/creative-print-ads/](http://www.boredpanda.com/creative-print-ads/)，同时也思考一下这些广告要表达的 message。

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

如果说某个广告是“针对”某类人的，地道英文里会用 **is aimed at** 这个短语。

[剑桥例句] This fast-food commercial **is aimed at** children.

## 8. 喜欢的应用

Describe an app you like.

You should say:

what it is

when you started using it

what you use it for

and explain why you like it.



难度指数：★★★☆☆

### Pat 的答案

I'm going to describe WeChat, a social media app developed by Tencent.





I first used the app about five years ago **on a friend's recommendation** and I've been using it since then.

I often use WeChat to send **text messages** or **voice messages** to my family and friends. Sometimes I also use the app to **video-chat** with them.

But it's more than an **instant messaging app**. Another **feature** that I use often is called "Moments", which allows me to **share photos and videos** with my family and friends. I can also **comment on** the photos and videos they have **uploaded** to their "Moments".

Sometimes I also use WeChat to **scan QR codes** and **make payments**.

I like this app because it's a very convenient way to **stay connected with** my family and friends. It's also a great way to **share exciting or funny moments in my life** with them, and using WeChat is free.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

社交媒体应用 **social media app** (例如 WeChat, FaceBook, Twitter 等)

腾讯 **Tencent**

在朋友的推荐下 (使用) **on a friend's recommendation**

文字短信 **text message**

语音短信 **voice message**

视频通话 **voice-chat**

实时信息应用 **instant messaging app**

特色功能 **feature**

微信上的“朋友圈”功能 **Moments**

对……进行评论 **comment on ...**

上传 **upload**

扫二维码 **scan QR codes**

支付 **make payments**

与……保持联系 **stay connected with / keep in touch with**





### 扩展词汇

- 天气预报应用 weather app      健身应用 fitness app
- 地图应用 map app      导航应用 navigation app
- 音乐应用 music app
- 图片分享应用 photo-sharing app (例如 Instagram)
- 视频分享应用 video-sharing app (例如 YouTube 和 TikTok 抖音)
- 游戏应用 game app      头像图片 profile photo / profile picture
- 用户群体 user base
- 微信公众号 a WeChat official account / a WeChat public account
- 是一个很好的信息来源 is a good source of information
- 移动支付 mobile payments
- 有各种各样的特色功能 has a wide variety of features
- 表情图案 emoji      截屏 take a screenshot
- 微信支付功能 WeChat Pay
- 用微信发红包 use WeChat to send red envelopes
- 玩微信游戏 play WeChat games

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

这个网址列出了 2019 年最受 iPhone 用户欢迎的一些应用：[www.digitaltrends.com/mobile/best-iphone-apps/](http://www.digitaltrends.com/mobile/best-iphone-apps/)，您不妨看看自己是不是也给其中的一些应用贡献了一票

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

如果想说自己“订阅了”某个微信公众号，很多同学会想到 subscribe 这个动词。确实，在地道英文里，**不论是订阅**报纸、杂志还是**订阅**某种网络信息服务，都是用 **subscribe to ...** 来表达。需要注意的是 subscribe 后面的 to 不能漏掉，否则听起来就有点“别扭” (awkward) 了 😊。

[剑桥例句] I **subscribed to** their newsletter last week.



## 9. 喜欢的网站

Describe your favourite website.

You should say:

which website it is

how often you visited this website

whether it's popular or not

and explain why you like it.



每个人的兴趣爱好不同，喜欢的网站也就会多种多样，但好消息是：native speakers 在描述网站时的常用词汇和短语却相当集中，完全可以在短时间内快速突破。

难度指数：★★★★☆

### Pat 的答案

My favourite website is Yahoo. com. I'm sure you've heard a lot about it because it's one of the most popular websites in the world. I visit it every day, and I have its app on my mobile phone.

I like this website because it's very **informative** and **entertaining**. It provides a wide variety of information, like the **latest world news**, **business updates** and reports about important sports events. It also offers the latest entertainment stories, including news stories about film stars, TV **celebrities** and famous singers.



This website also has a Question-and-Answer ( **Q & A** ) **section**. It's like an **online community** where people ask questions and **interact with** each other. Lots of people go there to ask questions. They usually get answers very quickly. And it seems most of the answers are **detailed** and helpful.



Another reason I like this website is that its **layout** is clear and well-organised. It's **user-friendly** and always **easy to navigate**.

I like this website also because its **founders**, Jerry Yang and David Filo, started the website when they were just 24. Their success has **inspired** many young people to **create new ideas** and start their own businesses. So the website is not only informative but also **inspiring**.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

应用程序	app	信息量很大的	informative
娱乐性很强的	entertaining	最新发生的	latest
消息的更新	update	报导	report
名人	celebrities	问答部分	Q & A section
网络社区	online community	互动	interact
详细的, 具体的	detailed	网站内容的布局	website layout
网页	webpage	井井有条的	well-organised
很方便使用的, “用户友好的”	user-friendly		
(网站的) 导航很明确, 内容很便于查找	is easy to navigate		
创建者	founder	激励 (动词)	inspire
励志的 (形容词)	inspiring	创造出新的想法	create new ideas

### 扩展词汇

点击率	hits	网络购物	online shopping
购物网站	shopping website		
社交网站	social networking website	(例如: Facebook 和 Twitter)	
视频共享网站	video-sharing website	(例如: YouTube 和 TikTok 抖音)	
图片共享网站	photo-sharing website	(例如: Instagram)	

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



请求加好友	send a friend request	用户的注册信息	profile
个人信息	personal information	盗用用户名	ID theft
微博	micro-blog	名人之间的骂战	celebrity spat
关注某人	follow sb.	对某人取消关注, “取关”	unfollow sb.
“僵尸粉”	“zombie followers”	网络论坛	online forum
聊天室	chatroom	分享想法和观点	share ideas and opinions
结识新朋友	make new friends	楼主	OP
帖子	post		
已经被转帖了很多次	has been reposted many times		
获得很多个“赞”	get many “likes”		
在网上疯传	go viral (它是最近几年在英美口语里非常流行的一个新 phrase)		
上传	upload	下载	download
安装	install		
收藏一个网站的网址	bookmark a site (英美口语里也常把 website 简称为 site)		
热门词	buzzword	虚拟的世界	the virtual world
沉迷于	be addicted to		

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

著名的消费者报告 (Consumer Reports) 杂志的这个网址会让你对于网络购物有更深入的了解: [www.consumerreports.org/cro/shopping-websites/buying-guide.htm](http://www.consumerreports.org/cro/shopping-websites/buying-guide.htm)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

谁都知道网站叫 website, 可“网络公司”的英文是……? 除了可以说 Internet company 之外, dotcom 也是地道英文里对网络公司的一种常用称呼。

[剑桥例句] A survey found that 20 of the top 150 European dotcoms could run out of cash within a year.



## 10. 故事

### ☆ 童年时听过的故事之三只小猪

Describe a story you heard as a child.

You should say:

who first told you this story

whether you heard it again later

what the story was about

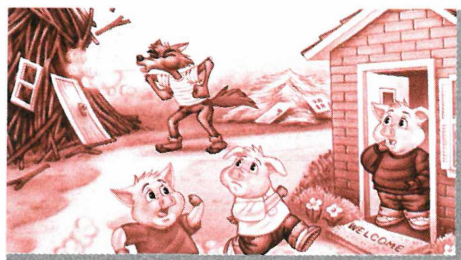
and explain why you still remember this story.



难度指数：★★★★☆

#### Pat 的答案

Let me talk about one of my favourite childhood stories, called *The Three Little Pigs*. I first heard the story from my grandpa, and I also heard it from some other relatives.



The story goes like this: **Once upon a time** there were three little pigs. They moved to a new village and built their own houses.

The first little pig built **a straw house** because that was easy. But the house was not strong at all. The second little pig built **a stick house** for himself. He didn't spend much time on it, and the house was not strong either. The third little pig was hardworking. He built **a brick house**. It took him a lot of time, and the house was very strong.

Then a wolf came along and **blew down** the first pig's straw house. The pig ran to the stick house. Then the wolf also blew down the stick house and **chased** the two pigs to the brick house.

The brick house was very strong. The wolf couldn't blow it down. He then tried to enter the house through the **chimney** and got killed in a pot of **boiling water**. And



the three little pigs **lived happily ever after**.

I still remember this story because it's interesting and **meaningful**. It teaches us to hope for the best but prepare for the worst. It also teaches us that **hard work always pays off**.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

在很久很久以前 **Once upon a time...**

从此之后快乐地生活着 **lived happily ever after** (经典英文童话的最常用开头和结尾, 英美小朋友们全都会背)

亲戚 **relatives**

稻草屋 **straw house**

木棍搭成的屋子 **stick house**

用砖盖成的屋子 **brick house**

吹倒 **blow down**

追赶, 追逐 **chase**

烟囱 **chimney**

沸水 **boiling water**

### 扩展词汇

寓言 **fable**

伊索寓言 **Aesop's Fables**

童话 **fairytale**

白雪公主和七个小矮人 **Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs**

灰姑娘 **Cinderella**

皇帝的新装 **The Emperor's New Clothes**

美人鱼 **The Little Mermaid**

丑小鸭 **The Ugly Duckling**

安徒生 **Hans Christian Andersen**

孙悟空 **The Monkey King**

忠诚的 **loyal**

打妖精 **fight against demons**

童话故事的“寓意”英文怎么讲? 请用 **moral** 这个词。注意: 作“寓意”的意思时 **moral** 是名词。

[剑桥例句] **The moral of the story is** that honesty is always the best policy.

如果您还对其他儿童故事有兴趣, 可以看看这个网站: **etc.usf.edu/lit2go/68/fairy-tales-and-other-traditional-stories**, 而且还是既能读又能听

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



## 11. 喜欢的外国文化

Describe a foreign culture you're interested in.

You should say:

which culture it is

how you learned about this culture

what you know about this culture

and explain why you feel this culture is interesting.



很多中国同学对这道题感到恐惧，因为 culture 是一个比较抽象的概念。但如果你理解考官的期待其实只是一个扣题、清晰、并适当含有细节的答案，就完全可以通过简洁的语言和适当举例来描述清楚一种外国文化。绝不要听起来活像是一位“异域文化权威”（如果你都已经深谙外国文化，那又何必非要拼尽全力考雅思出国呢？）。请牢记：IELTS 考官真正关注的是——你的英语能力。

难度指数：★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about British culture.

I learn about British culture mostly from newspapers, magazines and television. And I have some **online friends** from the UK, who often share their ideas about their culture with me.

The first thing that comes to mind when I think about British culture is the **historic buildings**. There're many **world-famous** historic buildings in Britain, like Buckingham Palace and the British Museum. I really hope I can visit them someday.

I'm also very interested in British **literature**. So many good novels were written by British writers, such as *Pride and Prejudice*, *Robinson Crusoe*, and of course, *Harry Potter*.

Some of my favourite bands are also from the UK, like Coldplay and One



Direction. It seems there're many **musically-talented** people there. I also know that a lot of people in the UK like football, and I'm a big fan of Manchester United.

I'm interested in British culture because it's very different from Chinese culture. For example, **Easter** is an important festival in the UK, but not many people in China celebrate Easter. Another interesting difference is British people drive on the left side of the road, but we drive on the right side of the road.

I'm interested in British culture also because a good understanding of British culture can really help me improve my English skills. So I always want to learn more about it.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

了解…… **learn about...** (在英美生活口语里, learn 并不总是“学习”,也经常用来指“了解”)

网友 **online friends**

有重要历史意义的建筑 **historic buildings**

举世闻名的 **world-famous / world-renowned**

文学 **literature**

傲慢与偏见 **Pride and Prejudice**

鲁滨逊漂流记 **Robinson Crusoe**

哈利·波特 **Harry Potter**

很有音乐天赋的 **musically-talented**

曼联队 **Manchester United**

复活节 **Easter**

### 扩展词汇

旅游景点 **tourist attractions**

议会大楼 **the Houses of Parliament** (这个 house 习惯用复数, 伦敦本地人也经常称它为 the Palace of Westminster)

泰晤士河 **the Thames**

“伦敦眼” **the London Eye** (伦敦很有名的一个摩天轮 ferris wheel)



大本钟 Big Ben

去观光 go sightseeing

作者 author

简·奥斯汀 Jane Austen

丹尼尔·笛福 Daniel Defoe

罗琳 J. K. Rowling

大卫·贝克汉姆 David Beckham

偶像 idol

非常喜欢 adore

切尔西队 Chelsea Football Club (生活里经常简称为 Chelsea)

利物浦队 Liverpool Football Club (常简称为 Liverpool)

阿森纳队 Arsenal Football Club (简称 Arsenal)

伦敦人对伦敦地铁的昵称 “the Tube” 公共交通 public transport

高效率的 very efficient

友好而且有礼貌的 friendly and polite

性格内敛的 reserved

很有幽默感 have a good sense of humour

世界级的大学 world-class universities

炸鱼土豆条 fish and chips

传统与风俗 traditions and customs

文化遗产 cultural heritage

纪录片 documentary

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

IELTS 口语的目标是尽可能准确地测试出你的英文口语能力，所以描述文化并不需要太深刻。但如果您考前时间充裕而且又对 culture 有深入的兴趣，就应该抽出时间来听一听 TED 嘉宾们关于文化的长篇探讨：[www.ted.com/topics/world + cultures](http://www.ted.com/topics/world+cultures)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

说起英国人，中国同学们往往会想到“彬彬有礼”这个词。尽管这个词并不适合所有的英国人，但总体而言还是比较准确的。英文短语 **polite and well-mannered** 就等于中文“彬彬有礼的”。

[剑桥例句] He's **polite and well mannered**, and pleasant to hang out with.



## 12. 一件艺术品之 雕塑

Describe a sculpture.

You should say:

where you saw the sculpture

what kind of sculpture it was

what it looked like

and explain whether you liked it or not.



难度指数: ★★★★★☆

### Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a sculpture I saw at a sculpture exhibition last month. The **theme** of the exhibition was "The Environment".

It was **an abstract sculpture** dealing with the subject of environmental pollution. It looked a bit like a person sitting in **a relaxed pose**.

The sculpture looked calm and peaceful from a distance. But as I moved closer to it, I noticed it had **cracks** all over it. These cracks made the beautiful sculpture look ugly and made me feel uncomfortable.

Some **working drawings** for this sculpture were also **on display**, which I found helpful. They showed that the ugly cracks were actually **designed** by the artist to **represent** the terrible damage that pollution caused to the environment.



I liked this sculpture because it was very **meaningful**. And although it was an abstract sculpture, its **message** was strong and clear. I liked it also because it was made from **recycled materials** which were very **eco-friendly**.



## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

展览 exhibition

主题 theme

抽象雕塑 abstract sculpture

(艺术品) 是关于某一主题的 deal with the subject of...

摆出很放松的姿态, 摆出很放松的 “pose” in a relaxed pose

平静安详的 calm and peaceful

从远处 from a distance

裂缝 cracks

布满…… all over...

雕塑家画的草图, 设计雕塑用的草图 working drawings

展示 on display

设计 design

象征着…… represent... / symbolise...

寓意深刻的 meaningful

雕塑要表达的信息 message

循环使用的材料 recycled materials

有益于环保的 eco-friendly



### 扩展词汇

观赏雕塑 view the sculptures

雕塑家 sculptor

标题 title

具象的雕塑 realistic sculptures

看起来很逼真的 is true to life

空间 space

细节 detail

石膏 plaster

粘土 clay

石头 stone

光滑的 smooth

粗糙的 rough

直的 straight

弯曲的 curved

优雅的 elegant

很有创意的 creative

轰动效应 shock value

探索 explore

美术馆, 画廊 art gallery

参观者 visitors



花园 garden

风景画 landscape painting

静物画 still life painting

人像 portrait (自画像就是 self-portrait)

水墨画 Chinese ink painting

构图 composition

光线 lighting

笔触 brush strokes

画布 canvas

画框 frame

杰作 masterpiece

具象画 realistic painting

抽象画 abstract painting

鲜明的色彩 vivid colours

激发强烈的感受 inspire strong feelings

安静平和的色彩 calm colours

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

Part 2 有时也会考查关于 painting 的话题，这个网址可以帮助您了解很多世界名画的描述方法：[totallyhistory.com/art-history/famous-paintings/](http://totallyhistory.com/art-history/famous-paintings/)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

有很多雕塑是用金属制作的，例如 **bronze sculptures** (用青铜制作的雕塑)，**stainless steel sculptures** (用不锈钢制作的雕塑) 等。如果不想记那么多，也可以把所有用金属制作的雕塑统称为 **metal sculptures**。

[剑桥例句] We enjoyed viewing the **metal sculptures** in the park.



## E 物质诱惑

### Pat 解题

本节会学到很多和“买买买”有关的词汇和短语。

谁都知道服装的拼写是 **clothes**，但却有很多同学不知道它的正确发音应该是 /kləʊðz/ ✓，而不是 /kləʊðiz/ ✗，因为 clothes 里面的 e 不发音。而人身上戴的配饰在地道英文里则叫 **accessories**，比如 earrings（耳环），bracelet（手镯），wristband（腕带）等。



在本节里我们还会学到很多 electronic devices。地道英文里有一个很棒的名词专门指电子的小东西，叫作 **gadget**，考试的时候如果遇到电子产品话题一定用 1~2 次。

当然我们还会学习更大型的 objects，比如 **cars**。Pat 的学生当中车迷（car buff）从来都不少，咱们可以看两种这辈子还能买得起的车型。

**handicrafts**（手工制作）一直是个难点，我们在本节也要突破。

一口气谈了这么多的 objects，希望我们不会变得 **too materialistic**（过于物质化）！

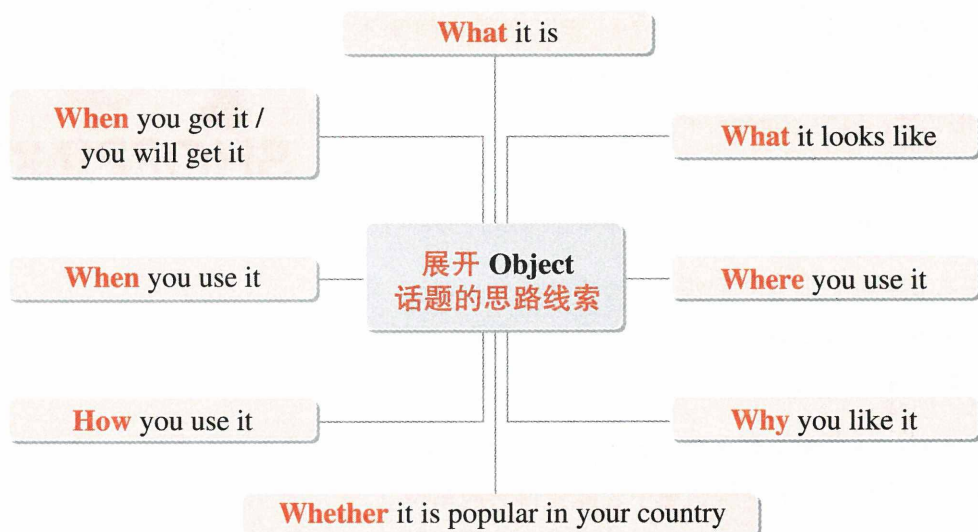
### 本类话题最有代表性的真题 Typical Topics

- \* Describe a vehicle.
- \* Describe a photo.
- \* Describe something that was made by yourself.
- \* Describe a childhood toy.
- \* Describe a gift you received.



## 展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Map

(如果卡片上的4个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案，那么下面的思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)



## 分级演示 Sample Answers

### 1. 交通工具

#### ☆ 交通工具之 森林人

Describe a vehicle you'd like to own.

You should say:

what the vehicle is

what it is like

whether it would be expensive to buy

and explain why you'd like to own it.





Pat 发现国内的男同学们只要提起真正适合“男僧”开的车就立刻想到“悍马”(Hummer)，可在全球都“Go green.”的年代里，像 Hummer 这样的“油老虎”(gas-guzzler) 在英美年轻人当中其实已经很少有人向往了。去年在美国和加拿大进行的一项最新调查显示，Subaru Forester 拥有很多受过良好教育 (well-educated) 的男性车主 (male car owners)，而且它的左右对称全时四轮驱动 (symmetrical all wheel drive) 也正在悄悄改变着英美传统观念中的“猛男”形象。

当然，只要英语地道，你说什么车型考官都会欣然接受，因为考官真正关心的问题是你是不是有能力用地道的英文给出一个扣题、清晰、自然的答案。

难度指数 ★★☆☆☆

#### Pat 的答案

I'm going to describe a car I'd like to own, which is a Subaru Forester.

The outside of the car looks **sporty** and attractive, and **the build quality** feels good.

The inside is **spacious and practical**. The headroom and legroom are perfect for me, and there's a lot of **cargo room** in the back. The **handling** of the car is also very good.



I'd like to own a Forester because it looks nice and it's **fun to drive**. It also has **comfortable seats** and plenty of cargo space. But it costs much less than a **luxury SUV** like a BMW X3 or an Audi Q5. So it's **good value for money**.

I **test-drove** a Forester last week and was very impressed with it. I'm pretty sure I'll buy one later this year or sometime next year.

#### 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

##### ► Tool Box

有运动感的 **sporty**

有吸引力的 **attractive**



车身的工艺 **build quality** (注意: 在这个固定短语里不要用 building)

宽敞而且实用的 **spacious and practical**

头顶距离顶棚的空间 **headroom**

腿部的活动空间 **legroom** (这两个词里的 room 不是指房间而是指空间)

车身后部的储物空间 **cargo room / cargo space**

操控性能 **handling** 能够提供驾驶乐趣 **is fun to drive**

舒适的座椅 **comfortable seats** 豪华级 SUV **luxury SUV**

它的性价比很高 **It's good value for money.**

试驾 **test-drive** (过去时 test-drove)

### 扩展词汇

发动机 **engine** 动力很足 **It has plenty of power.**

可靠耐用的 **reliable** 省油的 **fuel-efficient**

时尚的 **stylish** 车或建筑的外观 **exterior**

内部空间 **interior** 车的各项功能非常齐全 **It's fully-loaded.**

行车时的噪音很小 **It's quiet on the road.** 豪华的 **luxurious**

豪华车, 高端车 (固定短语) **luxury car** 经济型车 **affordable car**

跑车 **sports car** 电动车 **electric car**

房车 **RV / motor home**

全驱系统 **the all-wheel-drive system/ the AWD system** (全驱系统在冰天雪地或者路面湿滑的地方很有用, 而森林人特有的 **symmetrical AWD system** 更是连续数年被评为雪地表现最佳的全驱系统)

四驱 **four wheel drive** (对付雨雪天气这个也还行)

前驱 **front wheel drive** (它对付雨雪天气就会有点吃力了)

车的转向性能 **steering** 反应很灵敏的 **very responsive**

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果您将会怎么说



二手车的售出价格 **resale value** (有些人把“老外”全想象成富翁，其实在英美“富翁”也不少，开二手车甚至五、六手车的励志哥们也不在少数)

您可以在这个网站看到所有英国常见车型的详细介绍 (页面左上角 Choose a make 里面的 make 是名词，指车的品牌，model 则是指车的具体型号): [www.autocar.co.uk/car-reviews](http://www.autocar.co.uk/car-reviews)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

如果说车或者其他物品“定价合理的”，地道英文里常用合成词 **reasonably-priced**。

[剑桥例句] The car is fun to drive and **reasonably-priced**.

### ☆ 交通工具之 Mini-Cooper

Pat 发现国内的女同学们在说这道题时也总爱抛出一堆超级难词，彪悍程度已经不亚于一些猛男。“女汉子们”真应该试试用简单但是地道的英文更加清晰地描述这个话题。

难度指数：★★★☆☆

#### Pat 的答案



I'd really like to buy a Mini Cooper. A friend of mine bought a Mini Cooper last month. It cost her around 250,000 *yuan*. But I would say it looks like a 500,000 *yuan* car. (在真实的英文谈话里像 I would say...这类小短语特别多，其实并不是真就“非说不可”，但说了就更像是人与人之间的交谈，而不再是机器与机器之间的互殴)



The car looks very cute, like a **chubby** baby because it looks **solid and compact**. The inside is actually pretty **spacious**. The **front seats** feel very comfortable, and there's plenty of headroom. The back seats are a bit small, but I guess they would be large enough for children.



The car is **well-equipped**. I particularly like the **backup camera** because it makes **parking** easier and safer. The **speakers** also sound very impressive.

Unlike Beetles, Mini has a **powerful engine**. It's also **fuel-efficient**. That's really good news when the **petrol price** is still very high.

I'm sure I'll buy a Mini Cooper too because it's so fun and comfortable to drive, and it offers **good value for money**.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

胖乎乎的 <b>chubby</b>	结实紧凑的 <b>solid and compact</b>
宽敞的 <b>spacious</b>	前排座椅 <b>front seats</b>
后排座椅 <b>back seats</b>	头顶到顶棚的空间 <b>headroom</b>
设备先进的 <b>well-equipped</b>	倒车摄像头 <b>backup camera / rearview camera</b>
扬声器 <b>speakers</b>	停车 <b>parking</b>
与……不一样 <b>unlike...</b>	“甲壳虫” <b>Beetle</b>
弧线型的车身 <b>curved body</b>	强劲的发动机 <b>a powerful engine</b>
省油的 <b>fuel-efficient</b>	
汽油价格 <b>petrol price</b> (英式英语) / <b>gas price</b> (美式英语)	
它的性价比很高 <b>It is</b> (或者 <b>It offers</b> ) <b>good value for money</b> .	

### 扩展词汇

车或建筑的外观 <b>exterior</b>	车或建筑的内部 <b>interior</b>
皮座椅 <b>leather seats</b>	停车位 <b>parking spot / parking space</b>
低油耗 <b>good gas mileage / good fuel economy</b>	
羡慕 <b>envy</b>	方向盘 <b>steering wheel</b>
手动档 <b>stick shift / manual</b>	自动档 <b>automatic (transmission)</b>
敞篷车 <b>convertible</b>	跑车 <b>sports car</b>



流线型的 **streamlined**

底盘 **chassis** (真正爱车的人都明白: engine 和 chassis 其实才是最重要的, 车的外观其实真心不值多少钱)

商务用车 (车的正面是倾斜的那种长面包车) **minivan / MPV** (可别说成 MVP 😊)

车的品牌 **make** (这时它作名词) 车的型号 **model**

Pat 自己买车的时候通常会先到这个网站上比较 car reviews (车评) 然后再“出手”: [www.thecarconnection.com/new-cars](http://www.thecarconnection.com/new-cars)。您在出国之前可以把它作为熟悉用英文介绍汽车的好工具, 出国之后如果确实需要买车也不妨把它作为有用的参考。

### 容易发错音的汽车品牌 (请注意听音频)

**Mercedes Benz** (注意: 英文口语里通常都是用前面的第一个词 Mercedes 来简称“奔驰”, 一些国内朋友用 Benz 来说“奔驰”其实是不地道的英文)

**Volkswagen** 大众      **Hyundai** 现代      **Lexus** 雷克萨斯

**Lamborghini** 兰博基尼      **Cadillac** 凯迪拉克      **Porsche** 保时捷

**Ferrari** 法拉利      **Renault** 雷诺      **Citroen** 雪铁龙

**Chevrolet** (生活里也经常简称为 Chevy) 雪佛兰

下面这 5 个品牌同学们一般会说错, 但也一起列出来吧:

**BMW** 宝马      **Audi** 奥迪

**Land Rover** 路虎      **Toyota** 丰田

**Honda** 本田

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

怎样用地道的英文来说一辆车“很费油”? 地道英文里常用 It's a gas-guzzler (发音/gæs'gʌzlə/), 来表达对喝油无极限的“油老虎”的无奈。

[剑桥例句] **Gas-guzzlers** are expensive to drive because they use more fuel.



## 2. 电子产品

Describe something electronic that you use often.

You should say:

what it is

where you bought it

what you use it for

and explain why you like it.



### ☆ 电子产品之 iPhone 8

#### Pat 指南



热爱 iPhone XS 的“真土豪”和追求低调的“安卓粉”也不必 complain，因为您不但可以借鉴这个答案的 ideas 和 words and phrases，而且还可以在“扩展词汇”里看到对描述 iPhone XS 和安卓手机很有用的地道词汇和短语 ☺

难度指数：★★★★☆

#### Pat 的答案

I'm going to describe my iPhone 8. I **waited in line** outside our local Apple store for hours to buy it. It's really worth the time I spent waiting in line!

I've used many **smartphones**. My iPhone 8 is definitely the best. It's **thin and light**, and the **Retina HD display** is sharp and clear. The A11 **chip** is very fast and all the **apps** and games run smoothly **without any lagging**.

I use my iPhone 8 to **browse the Web**, play music and games, and take pictures.

The **image quality** of the 12-megapixel camera is amazing.

And of course, I use it for phone calls and **text messages**. The **call quality** is pretty good. Sometimes I also use the **map app** on my phone to **get directions**.





I like my iPhone 8 because it's fun to use and looks great. It's also easy to carry, and **wireless charging** is **convenient and reliable**. It helps me **keep in touch with family and friends**.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

电子用品 **electronic device / electronic gadget** (后面这个数码迷们更爱用)

排队 **wait in line**

芯片 **chip**

智能手机 **smartphone**

很薄而且很轻的 **thin and light**

“视网膜”高清显示屏 **Retina HD display**

(显示效果) 锐利清晰的

**sharp and clear**

应用程序 **app**

没有任何滞后, 非常流畅 **without any lagging**

上网 **browse the Web / surf the Internet**

(相机的) 成像质量 **image quality**

百万像素 **megapixel**

短信 **text messages**

通话质量 **call quality**

确定行进路线 **get directions**

和亲友们保持联系 **keep in touch with family and friends / stay connected with family and friends**

无线充电 **wireless charging**

方便可靠的 **convenient and reliable**

### 扩展词汇

“刷脸”解锁 **unlock my phone with Face ID**

增强现实 **augmented reality / AR**

无线耳机 **wireless headphones**

立体声扩音器

**stereo speakers**

做工精美的

**well-built**

便于携带的

**portable**

非常漂亮的

**gorgeous**

很时尚的

**stylish**

触摸屏

**touch screen**

铃声 **ring tone**

令人愉快的

**pleasant**

屏幕

**screen / display**

高分辨率的 **HD / high-definition**

(色彩) 鲜明的 **vivid**

(色彩) 准确的 **accurate**

内置相机 **built-in camera**

存储容量 **storage capacity**

接听电话的效果 **reception quality**



电池充一次电之后的使用时间 **battery life** (不要只看字面误解为电池的终生寿命)

特色功能 **features**

指纹传感器 **fingerprint sensor**

触摸验证功能 **Touch ID**

私人助理 **personal assistant**

语音激活的 **voice-activated**

限量版 **limited edition / special edition**

世界销量最大的智能手机 **the world's top selling smartphone**

苹果移动设备的操作系统 **iOS**

使用安卓系统的手机 **an Android phone / an Android-based phone**

不像苹果手机那么贵 **is less expensive than an iPhone**

设计得很合理的 **well-designed**

可靠耐用的 **reliable**

方便使用的 **user-friendly**

SD 卡槽 **SD card slot**

把它轻松地放进口袋 **slip it into my pocket**

它的性价比很高 **It's good value for money.** 应用程序 **apps**

天气预报应用程序 **weather app**

音乐播放应用程序 **music-player app**

视频播放应用程序 **video-player app**

打视频电话 **make video calls**

健身应用程序 **fitness app / work-out app**

地图应用程序 **map app**

重要事务列表应用程序 **to-do list app**

简单实用的 **simple and practical**

穿戴设备 **wearable device**

智能手表 **smartwatch**

健身手环 **fitness band 或者 fitness tracker**

喜欢数码产品的朋友必须经常登录这个网站，因为它不仅对备考 Part 2 有帮助，更是数码爱好者的乐园：[www.engadget.com/reviews/cellphones](http://www.engadget.com/reviews/cellphones)

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Time to Branch Out.

推而广之

Describe a gift you received.

Describe something that you lost.



## 补充弹药

a thoughtful gift 很“贴心”的礼物 precious 珍贵的

It's the thought that counts. (固定习语) 最重要的是心意。

brings back fond memories 唤起美好的回忆

looked high and low for... 到处找……

upset 心烦的，“很郁闷的”

regret doing sth. 后悔做某事

Extra Ammo

## ☆ 电子产品之 iPad Air

### Pat 指南



在英美生活过的人都知道：Apple 在当地大学生当中确实拥有相当高的忠诚度 (enjoys such a high level of loyalty among university students)。每次做集体 presentation 的时候，放眼望去尽是一个个闪亮的 Mac 大白苹果。很多英美年轻人虽然躺在沙发上用 iPad 的时候经常砸到鼻子或者门牙，可还是痴心不改 (They're hooked on Apple's stuff.)。

Pat 并不关心您是一个“果粉” (an Apple fan) 还是一个“果黑” (an Apple detractor)。我只想向您证明：只要思路清晰、扣题，即使是像电子产品这样的“技术性卡片”也同样可以用浅显易懂的英文来清楚地描述。

难度指数 ★★★★★

### Pat 的答案



I'm going to talk about my iPad Air. I bought it from the Apple online store.

It's very thin and light. I can easily carry it with just one hand. I guess that's why it's called iPad "Air".



The screen looks sharp and clear. Colours are bright and vivid. And I have to say the iSight camera is almost too good for a tablet. The image quality is amazing, and it can also record HD videos.



I use my iPad to send and receive emails, watch films, **read e-books** and play games. I also often use it to take pictures and record videos. It's always easy to carry and fun to use.

It's Your Turn.

## 扩展词汇

感光器 sensor



捕捉人生里的宝贵瞬间 capture precious moments in life

网络摄像头 webcam 打视频电话 make video calls

优盘 USB disk (native speakers 有时也把它称为 USB drive)

USB 接口 USB port

把它和电脑连接起来 connect it to a computer

传输速度 transfer rate

这个网址堪称“家电大全”，只要在搜索框里输入您想说的产品就可以找到详细的 product information: [www.bestbuy.com](http://www.bestbuy.com)

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

Apple 的很多产品已经超出了生活必需品 (necessities) 的范围，而是为我们提供了更多休闲放松的选择。“休闲放松”除了 relax 之外，还有个 native speakers 相当常用的动词叫 **unwind** (发音/ʌn'waɪnd/)。

[剑桥例句] Cooking a meal is a good way to **unwind** after a stressful day at work.

## 3. 照片

### ☆ 照片之 与人合影

Describe a photo that you like.

You should say:

what the photo is

when it was taken

where it was taken

and explain why you like it.





Pat 指南



有很多同学喜欢 Ed Sheeran 的那首 Photograph，但是却觉得这道题即使用中文说也绝难说到 1'30" 以上。

确实，照片是平面的 (two-dimensional)，就算放大之后也就只有那么大，只能从照片的一个 corner 描述到另一个 corner。但题目里明确问了 when, where, why 等问题，所以适当谈谈拍照的经过和自己的感受不仅是扣题的，而且也是考官期待的。

比如描述过春节时全家人一起拍的一张照片，和父母一起度假时在一个旅游景点拍的一张照片，参加一个朋友的婚礼时与新娘 (bride) 和新郎 (groom) 一起拍的照片，参加某个考试拿到成绩之后的一张自拍 (selfie) 等等，都可以自然、扣题地谈出一些照片之外的内容。如果说拍到了一个名人 (celebrity) 的照片也不错，因为还可以合理合法地把这个名人描述 2~3 句 (但注意不要太多 Less is more.)。

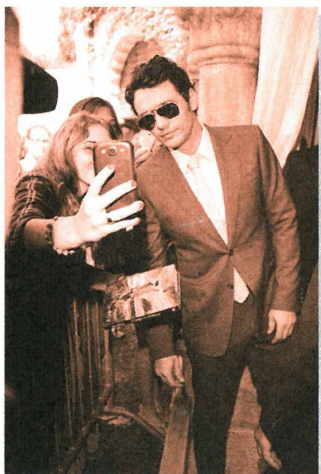
难度指数：★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a photo I like. It was taken last month while I was at the Hong Kong airport, waiting for my flight.

I was chatting with some friends. All of a sudden, I noticed a man who looked exactly like... (the celebrity's name).

... is... (这里可以自然地加入 2~3 句介绍这个 celebrity 的内容，不要长，注意这部分可以用现在时)



So I became curious. I went up to him and asked if he was ... He smiled politely and nodded. I was so excited because I'd never thought I could meet him in real life.

I told him I really liked his films (or songs, music videos, TV shows). I also took out my mobile phone and asked him if I could take a selfie with him.

He was like, "Sure!" Then he smiled and posed for the picture. He even said "cheese"!



After I returned home, I **printed out** the picture and **hung** it on my living room wall, and I've shown it to many friends.

I like the picture because it **reminds me of** a very exciting experience. I'd never thought such a famous person could be so friendly and **approachable**.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

机场 **airport**

航班 **flight**

聊天 **chat**

突然间 **all of a sudden**

好奇的 **curious**

很礼貌地微笑 **smile politely**

点头 **nod**

拍自拍照 **take a selfie**

摆姿势 **pose**

他/她当时说：“……” **He / She was like, “ ... ”** (口语里经常这样引述别人的话)

说“茄子” **say “cheese”** (中文照相说“茄子”，英文照相说cheese“奶酪”)

打印出来 **print out**      把它挂在……上面 **hang** (过去时 hung) **it on...**

让我想起…… **remind me of...**    平易近人的 **approachable**



### 扩展词汇

把照片放在像框里 **get the picture framed**

很值得回忆的经历 **a memorable experience**

令人愉快的经历 **an enjoyable experience**

家庭照片 **family photo**

集体的合影 **group photo**

(某个人或某个事物) 让我一整天都很开心 **... really made my day!**

编辑照片 **edit the photo**

图片编辑应用程序 **photo-editing app**

这个网址不仅含有很多与拍照有关的地道词汇和短语，而且也是“实用自拍指南”：[www.wikihow.com/Take-Good-Selfies](http://www.wikihow.com/Take-Good-Selfies)

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

说一个人“很上镜”，不能说 very good on a camera，而要说 He's / She's very **photogenic**. (/fəʊtəʊ'dʒenik/). 而说一个人“不喜欢照相”，在地道英文里则要说 He's / She's camera-shy. (面对镜头害羞)

[剑桥例句] Chloe is very **photogenic**. She has the type of face that looks attractive in a photo.

## Time to Branch Out.

### 推而广之

Describe an important letter you received / you wrote.

## 补充弹药

a nice surprise 惊喜      an admission letter 录取通知  
confirmed my place on the degree programme I applied for  
确认我获得了我所申请的学位项目里的一个名额  
a job offer letter 表示愿意提供一个工作职位的信  
got the job I applied for 得到了我申请的工作职位  
accept the job offer 接受该职位      an apology letter 道歉信  
a thank-you letter 感谢信      moving 感人的  
This letter really made my day. 这封信让我一整天都很高兴

Extra Ammo

## 4. 手工制作 (handicraft)

### ☆ 手工制作之 风筝

Describe something you made.

You should say:

what the thing was





why you made it  
how you made it  
and explain whether you still have it today.

Pat 指南



北京给 Pat 印象最深的是什么？不是 the Forbidden City，也不是 the courtyard houses，更不是 Peking Roast Duck，而是晴天时北京天空上飞的风筝，那么自由，那么悠闲（carefree），是简单的快乐（simple pleasure）。我们试试能不能用同样简单、清晰的英语来把做风筝的过程说清楚。

难度指数：★★★★☆

Pat 的答案

Let me talk about a simple kite I made for my **cousin** last week. I'd never made a kite before, so I thought it would be hard. But it turned out that making a kite was actually easy and fun.

I decided on the shape of the kite first. It seemed to me that making a **square** kite would take less time. It would also be easier for my cousin to carry.

So I went to **an arts and crafts shop** near my home and got a piece of **coloured paper** and two long **plastic sticks**.

I took them home and **drew** a large square on the paper with a **pencil**. And I asked my cousin to **cut out** the shape with **scissors**.

Then I **tied** the plastic sticks **together** with a piece of **string** to make a "T" shape. This would be the **frame** of the kite.

After that, I **glued** the paper square to the frame. I also **attached** the flying line **to** the kite, and it was ready for its **first flight**.





We went to the park near my cousin's home to fly it. The wind was quite strong, so the kite **went straight up** and **soared** into the sky. Our hard work really **paid off**.

My cousin took the kite home. He really liked the kite, but I have no idea where it is now. Maybe he still keeps it at home, or maybe he's **thrown it away**. He's just an 8-year-old child, anyway...

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

表弟/表妹/表姐/表哥 **cousin**

关于……做出选择 **decide on...**

卖美术和手工用品的商店 **arts and crafts shop** 彩纸 **coloured paper**

塑料棍 **plastic stick**

铅笔 **pencil**

剪刀 **scissors**

线绳 **string**

粘起来 **glue**

风筝的控制线 **flying line**

放风筝 **fly the kite**

(努力) 有回报 **pay off** (过去时: paid off)

没想到却是…… **It turned out that...**

正方形 **square**

画 **draw** (过去时: drew)

剪出(某个图形) **cut out**

把……绑到一起 **tie... together**

支架 **frame**

固定到……上面 **attach... to...**

首次飞行 **first flight / maiden flight**

冲上高空 **soar into the sky**

### 扩展词汇

圆形 **circle**

三角形 **triangle**

螺丝刀 **screwdriver**

钳子 **pliers**

把……拧起来 **twist**

长方形 **rectangle**

椭圆形 **oval**

镊子 **tweezers**

把……弄弯 **bend**

折纸 **paper folding**

请参考答案的思路,并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词,思考如果是您将会怎么说



剪纸 paper cutting

缝制 knitting (其实有不少英美老奶奶也喜欢“打毛衣”)

陶艺 pottery

这个网站提供了很多手工制作的详细过程，时间充分的同学不妨看一看：[www.kidspot.com.au/things-to-do/collection/craft-activities?sort=title](http://www.kidspot.com.au/things-to-do/collection/craft-activities?sort=title)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

自己动手制作物品可以提高人们，特别是儿童，解决实际问题的能力。在地道英文里怎样表达“解决实际问题的能力”呢？native speakers 就是用简单、自然的短语 **problem-solving skills**。

[剑桥例句] Educational toys can improve children's **problem-solving skills**.

## Time to Branch Out.

### 推而广之

Describe a toy.

什么是 toys? Longman 和 Oxford 的定义是 objects for children to play with, 所以 kite 本身也是 a toy。您不妨再看看：[www.toysrus.com](http://www.toysrus.com)，在这里您将看到的玩具绝对比你这辈子见过的玩具都多，在页面左上角你既可以选择 Boys' Toys 或者 Girls' Toys，也可以根据不同的年龄 (Age) 来选择，更棒的是每个玩具的 Overview 下面还有 More details. 可以让你充分享受一次“返老还童”的感觉

## 补充弹药

Rubik's Cube 魔方 (英语里“拼魔方”叫作 solve a Rubik's Cube)

puzzle 拼图游戏

Lego blocks 乐高积木

educational toys 益智玩具 develop their imagination 发展他们的想象力



## 补充弹药

marbles 当它指玩具时并不是指大理石，而是指玻璃弹子

toy car 玩具汽车      toy mobile phone 玩具手机

remote-controlled cars / radio-controlled cars 遥控汽车

Barbie doll 芭比娃娃      become more caring 变得更有爱心

Extra Ammo

## 5. 服装

### ☆ 服装之 旗袍 / 唐装

Describe an piece of clothing you like.

You should say:

what it is

what it looks like

when you wear it

and explain why you like it.



### Pat 指南



Part 2 里还有一个题目是 Describe your favourite traditional clothing. 所以如果准备旗袍 (chi-pao) 或者唐装，就可以把两个难题一起解决了。

Pat 在中国时看到唐装有很多翻译方法，但是多数听起来都很别扭 (They sound awkward. )。我会叫它 Tang suit，至少听起来还是自然的英文。

说唐装和旗袍会有一些相似的内容，但 Pat 个人感觉唐装比较宽松 (loose-fitting)，而它的效果主要是让男士看起来更富贵 (look wealthy and important)，而旗袍是紧身的 (close-fitting)，而效果主要是让女士看起来更优雅 (elegant)。

难度指数：★★★★☆



Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about my chi-pao. It was a birthday gift from my parents.

It's basically a one-piece, **close-fitting** dress. But it looks special because it's made from silk which is smooth and shiny. The **bell-like sleeves**, the colourful **pattern** and the **slits** on the sides also make it very different from other dresses.

I only wear my chi-pao on special occasions. For example, I wear it during Spring Festival family celebrations and at formal parties, such as business parties. I also wore it at my best friend's wedding last year.

I like it because it's **easy to slip on** and **comfortable to wear**. I like it also because it's beautiful and elegant, and makes me feel special and **confident**.



轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

► Tool Box

连衣裙 **dress**

宽松的 **loose-fitting**

丝绸 **silk**

光亮的 **smooth and shiny**

像铃铛那样的袖子 **bell-like sleeves**

花纹 **pattern**

服装侧面的窄缝，“开气儿” **slit**

特殊的场合 **special occasion**

家庭的庆祝活动 **family celebration**

穿上 **slip on / put on**

优雅的 **elegant**

基本上 **basically**

扩展词汇

独特的 **unique**

代表 **represent**

“国宝”，一个国家特有的事物 **national treasure**

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果您将会怎么说



清朝 the Qing dynasty

满族女性 Manchurian women

身份和地位的象征 status symbol

面料 fabric

缎子 brocade

棉 cotton

长袖子 long sleeves

短袖子 short sleeves

姿态优美的 graceful

家庭团聚 family reunion

制服 uniform

餐馆的男服务生 waiter

餐馆的女服务生 waitress

复杂的花纹 complicated pattern

鲜花图案 floral pattern

服装上的条纹装饰 stripes

服装上的圆点装饰 polka dots

衬衣 (男式) shirt

衬衣 (女式) blouse

牛仔裤 jeans

牛仔上衣 denim jacket

毛衣 (正面不带扣子的毛衣) sweater

毛衣 (正面有一排扣子的毛衣) cardigan 适合春秋穿的长袖运动衫 sweatshirt

“帽衫儿” hoodie

休闲的 casual

Part 2 里还有这样一张卡片: Describe a piece of jewellery (首饰) you like. 它的出现频率很低, 如果看到这个卡片, 真要好好反思一下考前自己是否虐待过小动物或者坐公车时没给老年人让座了。不过只要讲讲是谁送你的, 为什么送给你, 你收到时的心情和你为什么喜欢它, 也已经能说出不少扣题的内容。首饰的具体描述有时间的话可以看看伦敦著名的 Harrods 官网: [www.harrods.com](http://www.harrods.com), 在搜索栏输入 jewellery, 您就可以在每个商品的页面上看到 Overview 和 Details 了。咱们不必考虑价格, 因为“看一看也是享受” (This website is a feast for the eyes. ☺)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

“传统服装”除了可以叫 traditional clothing, 地道英文里还有一个短语 traditional costume, 也是指有特色的传统服装。

[剑桥例句] The child was dressed in a traditional costume.



下面是最有名的一些时尚名牌，有些还没有标准的中文翻译，请仔细听音频中的发音（它们当中大多数都不是英语，所以发音对中国同学们来说还是比较 tricky 😊）

BURBERRY	FENDI	CHANEL
GUCCI	CHOLE	HERMES
BVLGARI	DOLCE&GABBANA	LOUIS VUITTON
VERSACE	SALVATORE FERRAGAMO	MARC JACOBS
ANNA SUI	SWAROVSKI	GIVENCHY

### ☆ 自行车 （双语感悟）

#### Describe an important invention ( before the age of computers ).

计算机之前的发明，bicycle 也许是最值得我们继续使用而且也最环保（eco-friendly）的一种了。

首先，It was **invented** in the late 19th century by some Frenchmen. 然后，It became popular soon after it was invented, because it **didn't cost much** and it was **easy to ride**. 立刻流行起来了。Cycling was also **faster** and **more efficient** than walking. 原因就是：既不贵又好骑，而且比走路效率高。

Millions of people ride their bikes every day. Some people **cycle to work or school**. （骑自行车上班或者上学）Others ride their bikes **just for fun**. （另一些人就是为了骑车的乐趣）Cycling is also **a good form of exercise**. （骑车当然也是很好的锻炼方式）

不妨再了解一下 bicycle 的各个部分（parts）：

铃铛是 **bell**，不过好像我在北京骑过的几辆车铃铛都不响（The bell didn't work.）。车把叫作 **handlebars**，车闸叫 **brakes**，横梁是 **crossbar**，车座叫 **saddle**，脚踏板是 **pedals**，链条叫 **chain**，轮子当然就是 **tyres**（BrE）/ **tires**（AmE）了。

有些比较贵的自行车还有“变速器”，native speakers 把这个东东叫作 **shifter**。



如果自行车很新就说 It's **brand-new**. 已经比较旧了可以说 It's **a bit worn-out**. , 如果已经很久没骑过了, 就说 It's **gathering dust** now (在“积累灰尘”).

国内同学们爱用的 **biking** 在英美其实也经常可以说成 **cycling**, 很多英美小朋友在早晨出门之前还会特意问父母, “Can I **cycle to school** today?”

在北京如果 **cycling** 时还戴头盔肯定会被认为是小题大做 (make a fuss about nothing). 但是在英美, 骑自行车时戴头盔 (**wear a helmet** while riding a bike) 实在太常见了, 美国有些州甚至明文规定 18 岁以下的孩子不戴头盔是违法的, 连警察叔叔都要管。所以如果坚定地说一句 I always **wear a helmet** while riding my bike. , 会让 native speaker 考官觉得你这人特有责任感 (You're a **responsible and reliable** person. )。

在 Day 7 里面我们讲过 **cycling** 的各种好处当然也都可以拿过来说, 而且还可以继续扩展, 比如: Bicycles **don't need fuel** (不需要燃料), so they can help us save money. 当然还有环保的好处: Cycling is very **eco-friendly** because it's **zero-emission** (零排放). It can help us **reduce our carbon footprint**. (帮助我们减少“碳足迹”) 骑自行车对健康的好处也不要忘了: Cycling is a good way to **keep fit**. It also helps to **improve balance and coordination** (改善平衡和协调能力)。

在中国工作的雅思考官们当中环保主义者 (environmentalists) 的比例很高, 如果您从周一到周五每天都骑自行车上下班, 或者上学、放学都骑自行车, 也别忘了说一句 I **cycle to and from work** (or school) every weekday. ☺



## F 事件和经历

### Pat 解题

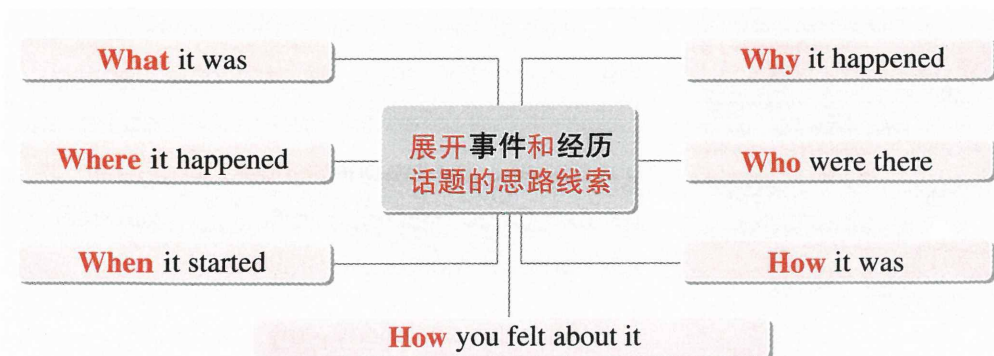
在英文里说到 an event 或者 an experience 的时候经常会用到下面这些短语 (不一定每一个都会用到, 但通常会用到其中的几个): **At first, ...**; **But then, ...**; **So ...**; **After that, ...**; **Then ...**; **...shortly afterwards** (很短的时间之后); **Finally, ...** 这些短语可以帮助我们事件的顺序讲得很清楚。如果是要求你描述过去的 event 或者 experience, 就不要忘了使用动词的过去时。

### 本类话题最有代表性的真题 Typical Topics

- \* Describe a sports event.
- \* Describe a special meal.
- \* Describe a happy event.
- \* Describe a success you achieved.
- \* Describe an important change in your life.

### 展开本类话题的思维导图 Mind Map

(如果卡片上的 4 个提示问题仍然不能让你说出充实的答案, 那么下面的思维导图可以帮助你继续扩展出扣题、充实的 ideas)





## 分级演示 Sample Answers

### 1. 开心的事件之 毕业典礼

Describe a happy event.

You should say:

what it was

where it was held

who went to the event

and explain why it was a happy event.



#### Pat 指南



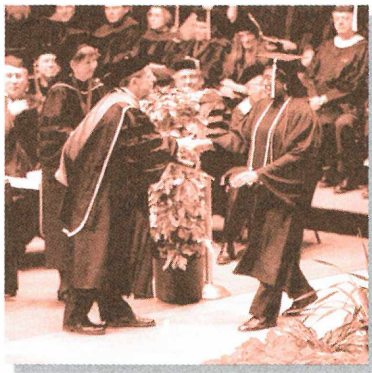
中国同学们熟悉的 happy event 选择很多，比如生日聚会（birthday party），迎接新年的聚会（New Year's Eve party），婚礼（wedding）等等。只要扣题、清晰、自然的答案就是好答案，正如考官们自己常说的，“It's not what you say. It's how you say it!”

难度指数：★★★★☆

#### Pat 的答案

Let me talk about my graduation ceremony. It was held at the main **assembly hall** of my university.

My classmates and I arrived at the assembly hall very early. We were really happy and excited, and all of us were dressed in **caps and gowns**.



After all the graduates and guests were seated, the **chancellor** gave a welcome speech and **congratulated** us on our success. Then he read out our names, one by one, **shook hands** with us, and handed us our **degree certificates**. That was one of the happiest moments of my life.

After the ceremony, my friends and I took lots of pictures together outside the assembly hall.



The graduation ceremony was a really happy event because we'd worked so hard to earn our degrees. The ceremony was a celebration of our **academic achievements**. We were happy and excited also because the ceremony **marked** the beginning of a new stage in our lives.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

礼堂 **assembly hall** (在英美大学里通常都是用人名来命名教学楼或者礼堂, 直接叫 ... Hall)

毕业典礼用的“博士帽”和“袍子” **cap and gown** (这是在英美校园里最常听到的说法, 如果想正式一点还可以说 mortarboard and gown, 但也有人就很轻松地说 hat and robe)

就座 **be seated**

大学的校长 **chancellor** (英) / **president** (美)

副校长 **vice-chancellor** (英国的大学校长通常只在仪式上能看到, 真正的“实权派”其实是副校长 ☺)

做欢迎演讲 **give a welcome speech**

出席 **attend**

祝贺 **congratulate** (动词) / **congratulation** (名词)

读出 **read/ri:d/ out** (过去时: read/red/ out)

握手 **shake hands** (过去时: shook hands)

递给 **hand** (过去时: handed)

学位证书 **degree certificates**

人生里最高兴的时刻之一 **one of the happiest moments of my life**

通过努力获得学位 **earn our degrees**

庆祝 **celebration** (名词) / **celebrate** (动词)

学业成就 **academic achievements**

标志着 **mark**

我们人生里的一个新阶段 **a new stage in our lives**

### 扩展词汇

中学校长 **headmaster** (英式) / **principal** (美式)



毕业证书 diploma

登台 walk onto the stage

从台上一边走到另一边 walk across the stage

特邀演讲者 guest speaker

感人的演讲 a moving speech

励志的演讲 an inspiring speech

流下喜悦激动的泪水 cried tears of joy and excitement

相互拥抱 hug each other

分享喜悦 share the happiness

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

这个网址堪称伦敦的 events 大全，而且其中有不少是 happy events:

[www.timeout.com/london/things-to-do/events-festivals](http://www.timeout.com/london/things-to-do/events-festivals)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

毕业典礼之所以让人快乐，是因为它让我们感到“自己所有的辛勤努力都有了回报”，native speakers 会说 **All of our hard work paid off.**

## 2. 不愉快的购物经历

Describe an unhappy shopping experience.

You should say:

when you had the experience

where you had the experience

what you bought

and explain how you felt after that experience.



难度指数：★★★☆☆

Pat 的答案

Let me talk about one of my recent shopping experiences, a very unpleasant

experience



one.

A couple of days ago, I went to a supermarket to buy some fruit. I saw some apples that looked great. I paid for them right away and went back home. But then I was so surprised to find out that the apples tasted bad. Some of them were even **rotten** inside. So I returned to the supermarket and **wanted my money back**. But their **customer service staff** just said something like, "You should have tasted them before you paid." I got angry and **argued with** them. I also **complained** to the customers around me. But their customer service employees still refused to give me a **refund**.



I was left with no choice, so I called the Consumers' Association and complained to them about my experience. They promised to look into the matter. Yesterday I got a phone call from the supermarket and they told me they would give me **a full refund**.

I have to say it was a very unhappy and **disappointing** experience. But I also learned a lesson from it — compare stuff before buying.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

令人很不愉快的 **unpleasant**

腐烂的 **rotten**

要回我的钱 **wanted my money back**

客服部的员工 **customer service staff / customer service employees**

(注意: 集合名词 staff 是对员工的统称, 不能加 s, 但是 employee 则可以加 s)

与……争论 **argue with...**

抱怨, 投诉 **complain**

退款 **refund**

全额退款 **a full refund**

消费者协会 **the Consumers' Association**

令人失望的 **disappointing**



东西 **stuff** (注意: 用 stuff 表示“东西”在英美口语里极为常见, 但要记住这个词只能用**单数**, 很多中国同学爱说的“stuffs”是错误的英文)

### 扩展词汇

粗鲁的 **rude**      脏乱的 **messy**

退货 **returned it to the shop**

不关心他们的顾客 **They didn't care about their customers.**

有负于他们的好名声 **They didn't live up to their reputation.**

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

## 3. 听到噪音的经历

Describe a time when someone made a lot of noise.

You should say:

when and where this happened

who this person was

what kind of noise it was

and explain how you felt about the noise.



难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

### Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about an experience I had at a hotel last summer. The hotel was close to the airport. I stayed there in order to catch **an early flight** the next morning.

I arrived at the hotel at around 8:30 pm. At first I was pretty happy. The employees were friendly and my room was nice and clean.





But then I **realised** I had a noisy neighbour next door. He talked very loudly on his phone for more than an hour. It sounded like he was **arguing with** someone on the phone. I also heard him throwing things onto the floor. After he **got off the phone**, he started **playing loud music**, probably on his **laptop**.

I **tried to ignore the noise**, but I couldn't. It made me feel **annoyed and upset**. So I called **the front desk** and **complained about** the noise. The front desk staff **apologised** and said they would ask my neighbour to **stop the noise**. The noise stopped about five minutes later.

I **got a good night's sleep** that night because the bed was very comfortable. But I think my stay at the hotel could have been **more enjoyable** without the noise from my neighbour.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

早班的航班 **an early flight**

意识到 **realise**

争论 **argue**

打完电话 **get off the phone**

笔记本电脑 **laptop**

努力忽视噪音 **try to ignore the noise**

感觉很烦而且很郁闷 **feel annoyed and upset**

前台 **the front desk**

抱怨, 投诉 **complain**

道歉 **apologise**

好好睡一晚 **get a good night's sleep**

令人愉快的 **enjoyable**

### 扩展词汇

聚会, 派对 **party**

大音量地播放音乐 **play loud music**

飞机起飞和降落的噪音 **the noise of planes taking off and landing**

很干扰注意力的 **very distracting**

让人很烦的 **very annoying**

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



## 4. 体育事件

Describe a sports event.

You should say:

what it was

where it was held

who went to the event

and explain why it was special.



### Pat 指南



最容易准备、不需要特别的专业知识的，肯定是 the Olympic Games。朗文词典对 the Olympic Games 的英文定义就是：an **international sports event** held every four years，但关键是怎样用清晰、简单的英文描述它。

在历届奥运会里，给 Pat 印象最深的是伦敦奥运会（London Olympic Games），因为它比里约奥运会（Rio Olympic games）更公正，而且英国文化也与考官们有着密切的关系。无论您是想描述哪届奥运会，道理都是一样的——清晰、扣题、自然的答案才是你的考官期待的。

难度指数：★★★★☆

### Pat 的答案

I'd like to talk about the London Olympic Games.

The **opening ceremony** showed us the amazing contributions Britain had made to the world. I particularly like Mr. Bean's **hilarious** performance and Paul McCartney's **performance** of *Hey Jude*.



During the London Olympics, more than 10,000 **world-class athletes** competed for their nations. Swimming was my favourite sport to watch at the Olympics. I was so excited when Sun Yang got the **gold medal** in the men's 400-meter



freestyle race. He really reminded me of the **Olympic motto** — “Faster, Higher, Stronger”.

The event was very special because only the best athletes in the world went there. Most of them **competed fairly and honestly**. It was a very **inspiring** event, and it really helped to **promote peace and understanding** among nations.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

开幕式 **opening ceremony**

贡献 **contributions**

超级搞笑的 **hilarious**

表演 **performance**

世界级的 **world-class**

运动员 **athlete**

金牌 **gold medal**

自由泳比赛 **free-style race**

让我想起…… **reminded me of...**

奥运格言 **the Olympic motto**

公正、诚实地竞争 **compete fairly and honestly** 励志的 **inspiring**

促进和平与理解 **promote peace and understanding**



### 扩展词汇

四分之一决赛 **quarter final**

半决赛 **semi-final**

决赛 **final**

被淘汰 **be eliminated**

击败 **defeat**

对手 **opponent**

通过艰苦的努力才获得的胜利 **a hard-earned victory**

金牌 **gold medal**

银牌 **silver medal**

铜牌 **bronze medal**

获奖运动员 **medalist**

站在优胜者的领奖台上 **stand on the podium** 国歌 **national anthem**

流下喜悦激动的泪水 **cried the tears of joy and excitement**

速度 **speed**

力量 **strength**

平衡和协调能力 **balance and coordination**



柔韧性 flexibility

团队精神 team spirit

奥林匹克公园 Olympic Park

奥运村 Olympic Village

奥运场馆 Olympic venues

特别精彩的部分, “亮点” highlight

主办城市 the host city

国际奥委会 The International Olympic Committee (IOC)

吉祥物 mascot

奥运会的五环图案 the Olympic rings

距离开幕式 100 天的倒计时 100-day countdown

闭幕式 closing ceremony

火炬传递 torch relay

点燃奥运圣火 light the Olympic Flame

开幕式的各国运动员走队 the Parade of Nations

竞争激烈的比赛 a fierce competition / a tight competition

势均力敌的比赛 an evenly matched competition

100 米短跑 100-meter sprint

摔跤 wrestling

柔道 judo

排球 volleyball

艺术体操 artistic gymnastics

花样游泳 synchronised swimming

跳水 diving

水球 water polo

射箭 archery

射击 shooting

击剑 fencing

田径项目 track and field events

跨栏比赛 hurdle race

残奥会 Paralympics / The Paralympic Games

看体育比赛的现场观众 spectators 志愿者 volunteers

代表他们 / 她们的国家 represent their countries

感受比赛的气氛 enjoy the atmosphere of the game

见证 witness

体育迷 sports buff

(某个地方) 挤满了人的 was packed

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



要跟踪最新的体育赛事，体育迷们就应该经常登录 the Guardian 的运动栏目：  
[www.theguardian.com/uk/sport](http://www.theguardian.com/uk/sport)

如果您更关注篮球、棒球等运动的赛事，这个网站的报导则更加及时的：  
[espn.go.com](http://espn.go.com)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

“激烈的竞赛”，很多同学都知道 **fierce competition** 这个短语。另外在英文口语里还有个说法：**a cliffhanger**。想象一下被悬在悬崖上的感觉多么让人紧张，就知道这样的比赛会是多么“扣人心弦”了。

[剑桥例句] The match was **a cliffhanger** until the final seconds.

## 5. 成功完成的一件事

### ☆ 成功的经历之 课堂演示 (presentation)

Describe something you did that was a success

You should say:

what you did

when you did it

what difficulties you faced

and explain how you felt when you were successful.



### Pat 指南



生活里的 success 有很多种。大的 success 比如找到了一份自己很喜欢的工作，或者成功地申请了自己理想的大学。小的 success 比如为好朋友举办了一个成功的生日聚会，考试得到了一个好成绩，或者人生里第一次为父母做出了好吃的饭菜等等。

这里 Pat 以一个成功的课堂演示为例，因为同时还可以准备好 Describe a speech. 这个比较难的考题。

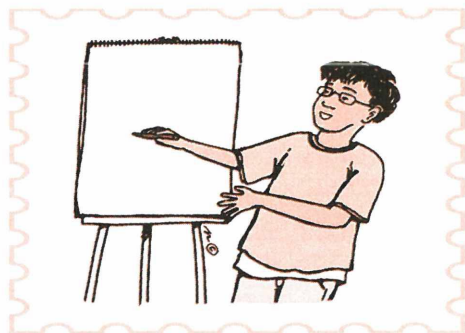
难度指数：★★★★☆☆



Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a successful presentation I gave last week.

Two weeks ago, our English teacher asked us to prepare a group presentation on some famous British writers and their **works**. He also divided us into teams of two or three for the presentation.



My teammate and I discussed the topic and made a list of the main points we wanted to make. After class, we went to the library and found some books on those writers and their works.

We went through the materials and **selected** the information we wanted to include. Then we made some **PowerPoint slides** and **note cards** to help us organise and remember the information. We also practised presenting in front of some friends.

We gave the presentation in class last Wednesday. My teammate gave **the introduction** and I presented the main part. At first, I was a bit nervous. I was just reading from the note cards. But as I went on, I felt more comfortable and **confident**. I spoke loudly and clearly. I also smiled and **made eye contact with** my audience. And I just **glanced at** the note cards from time to time rather than reading from them.

My teacher and my classmates were very impressed with our presentation. When we finished, our teacher said, "Good job!" And our classmates **clapped**. We felt really happy and excited, and very **proud of ourselves** for the success.

轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

► Tool Box

作品 **works**

分开 **divide**

含有两个或者三个成员的团队 **teams of two or three**



队友 **teammate**

挑选 **select**

“PPT” 幻灯片 **PowerPoint slides**

提示卡 **note cards**

组织 **organise**

开场白, 引言 **introduction**

有信心的 **confident**

进行目光交流 **make eye contact**

听众 **audience**

很快地看一眼 **glance at**

鼓掌 **clap**

感到自豪 **feel** (过去时: **felt**) **proud of ourselves**

### 扩展词汇

很强的成就感 **a strong sense of achievement**

获得成功 **achieve success**

令人难忘的经历 **a memorable experience**

高效率的 **efficient**

很有效的 **effective**

我的辛勤努力有了回报 **My hard work has paid off.**

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

课堂演示是英美年轻人经常要做的 **public speech**。此外, 在准备 **Describe an interesting talk or a speech**。这个话题的时候, 您也可以考虑描述一个 TED talk。这个网址提供了 TED 到目前为止最受欢迎的一些演讲视频, 话题都很有趣: **www.ted.com/playlists/171/the\_most\_popular\_talks\_of\_all**

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

地道英文里评价一个好的 **speech** 有很多标准, 比如 **moving** (感人的), **inspiring** (励志的), **witty** (机敏的), **insightful** (有洞察力的, 有“真知灼见”的), **well-rehearsed** (预先“演练”得很充分的), **well-structured** (结构很合理的), **informative** (信息量大的) 等等。但是说到底, a good speech 的共同点就是 **well-received** (很受听众欢迎的)。

[剑桥例句] His speech was **well-received** — the audience response was very positive.



## 6. 有趣的科学课

Describe an interesting lesson you attended.

You should say

when you attended this lesson

where you attended it

what it was about

and explain why you found it interesting



## Pat 指南



Pat 发现国内的朋友们普遍觉得这道题很“悲催”，跟学生们深入交流之后发现：其实“悲催”的主要原因是国内的科学课教学往往过于理论化（focus too much on theory），比较单调，甚至在有些同学的记忆里根本就没有过 an interesting science lesson。

如果您在国外上过中学的 science class，就会深感这边的科学课确实可以用 interesting 来形容，因为国外中学的科学课强调 hands-on science（实际动手的科学），重视实验和展示（experiments and demonstrations），而且上课时常会播放科学短片（show students science videos）。为了吸引学生的兴趣，science teachers 还经常拿可乐（coke），柠檬水（lemonade）、葡萄干（raisin）或者爆米花（popcorn）这类东西到教室做实验，甚至有时连微波炉（microwave）、烤箱（oven）这类厨具也会登场。现在英美中学的科学课里还时髦用一些不可逆的化学反应（irreversible chemical reactions）来展示 Harry Potter 的魔法到底是怎么变出来的，完全是真实的 Harry Potter 3D 版。所以 Pat 非常建议您把 an interesting science lesson 这道题说得轻松一点，如果说得过于理论化、抽象化，不仅有被判跑题（off-topic）的可能，也会让考官感到文化休克（culture shock）。

难度指数：★★★★☆☆

## Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a science lesson I attended at secondary school when I



was about 16 years old.

My science teacher was a middle-aged man who was nice and patient. Just like many scientists, he wore thick glasses and spoke slowly. But he **had a good sense of humour** and his lessons were always fun.



One of the most interesting science lessons he taught us was about **density**. He came into the classroom with a large **beaker**, a bag of **raisins** and a bottle of **Pepsi**, which really **attracted our attention**. He said he was going to share with us the “top secrets” of density.

He **poured** some Pepsi into the beaker, and then put a couple of raisins in it. Of course, the raisins sank to the bottom of the beaker. But then, to our surprise, after they hit the bottom of the beaker, they went back up and they just kept going up and down in the Pepsi, which was really interesting.

Our teacher then explained to us the reason for this. At first, the raisins were heavier than the Pepsi. But after some gas in the Pepsi went into the raisins, their density became lower than that of Pepsi, so they went up. Once the raisins reached the **surface** of the Pepsi, the gas in them was pushed out and their density became high again, so they started to sink again.

I found this lesson interesting because our teacher really made the concept of density **come alive**. The experiment was simple but really fun, and it made the concept of density very easy to understand.

### 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

#### ► Tool Box

中年的 **middle-aged**

耐心的 **patient**

镜片很厚的眼镜 **thick glasses**

有很强的幽默感 **has a good sense of humour**

密度 **density**

烧杯 **beaker**



葡萄干 raisins

百事可乐 Pepsi

吸引了我们的注意力 attract our attention

让我们感到惊奇的是 to our surprise

表面 surface

(本来很枯燥的事物) 变得很生动 come alive

实验 experiment

倒 pour

### 扩展词汇

碳酸饮料 carbonated drink

固体 solid

液体 liquid

悬挂 hang

加热 heat up

冷却 cool off

重量 weight

质量 mass

体积 volume

化学元素 chemical elements

周期表 the periodic table

化学公式 chemical equation

化学反应 chemical reaction

仪器 instrument

仪表 meter

天平 balance

镊子 tweezers

勺子 spoon

显微镜 microscope

秤 scale

滴管 dropper

试管 test tube

漏斗 funnel

温度计 thermometer

搅拌 stir

混合 mix

请参考答案的思路，并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词，思考如果是您将会怎么说

您有空时应该看看每年有超过 300 万人参观的伦敦科学博物馆 (the Science Museum of London) 的官网: [www.sciencemuseum.org.uk/educators/classroom-resources](http://www.sciencemuseum.org.uk/educators/classroom-resources)。选择你想要了解的学生年龄段，再选择 subject，您就可以看到考官们真正熟悉的 science lesson 到底是怎样教的了。



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

在地道英文里如果说一节课“引人入胜的”，最准确的表达是 **engaging** 这个形容词，而且它也可以用来描述 a speech, a TV show, a book 甚至 a childhood story。

【英美实例】Although I was tired, I found the book very **engaging**, making me want to stay up and keep reading it.

## 7. 一场表演

### ☆ 一场表演之 音乐会

Describe a performance, such as a dancing or singing performance.

You should say:

what kind of performance it was

when and where you watched it

what it was like

and explain how you felt about it.



### Pat 指南



Pat 自己是个乐迷 (I'm a music buff), 对古典音乐和流行音乐都很喜欢。这里给您讲讲去看一个 rock concert 的经历, 也许比古典音乐会 (classical concert) 更接近多数“烤鸭”朋友们的真实生活。您可以体会一下怎么用清晰、简单的英文描述那种热烈的气氛 (exciting atmosphere)。

难度指数: ★★★★★☆

### Pat 的答案

I went to ... ( *the band's name* ) 's concert last Friday night. It was held at the largest **stadium** in my city. I'd been a big fan of the band. I'd even made a





**poster** to hold up during the concert.

Last Friday night, I arrived at the stadium early. But it took me about 40 minutes to get to my seat. The concert **attracted** people of all ages, and the stadium **was packed**!

When the band **took the stage**, everyone stood up, **clapped and cheered**. Many people **screamed** the band members' names **at the top of their lungs**. Some people were so excited they even cried.

The band played songs from many of their **albums** and even played some **acoustic songs**. Then they performed their latest **single**. We **waved our arms** and **sang along**. I think for many people, that was the most memorable moment of the concert.

It was really exciting and **inspiring** to be so close to the band. And the **live music** was amazing. The band members did notice my poster. They even **waved to** me from the stage, which made me feel like I was on top of the world.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

体育场 **stadium**

海报 **poster**

吸引各个年龄段的人们 **attract people of all ages**

挤满了人的 **packed**

登台 **take** (过去时: took) **the stage**

鼓掌欢呼 **clap and cheer**

乐队成员 **band members**

高声呼喊 **scream... at the top of their lungs**

专辑 **album**

单曲 **single**

不用电子合成的歌曲, “不插电” 歌曲 **acoustic songs**

挥舞胳膊 **wave our arms**

一起跟着唱 **sing along**

最值得回忆的时刻 **the most memorable moment**



激励人的 inspiring

现场表演的音乐 live music (在这个短语里 live 的正确发音是/laiv/)

向……挥手 wave to...

极度喜悦的 (短语) on top of the world



### 扩展词汇

现场音乐会 live concert

表演者 performer

(粉丝) 变得狂热了 go wild (过去时: went wild)

偶像 idol

气氛 atmosphere

充满活力的 full of energy

极度兴奋的 thrilled

昏过去了 pass out

最精彩的部分, “亮点” highlight

乐队和观众之间的互动 interaction between the band and the audience

弯腰去和粉丝握手 bend down to shake hands with their fans

特邀嘉宾 special guest

太“劲爆”了 It was a blast!

非常精彩的表演, “现象级”的表演 a phenomenal performance

真正的乐迷一定听说过 Billboard (《公告牌》) 杂志,  
这个网址会为您及时发布最新音乐节的相关资讯和详细介绍:  
[www.billboard.com/festivals](http://www.billboard.com/festivals)

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

演唱会上歌迷们挥舞的“荧光棒”用地道英文怎么说? glow sticks 就是口语里的“荧光棒”, “挥舞”则可以用动词 wave 来表达。



## 8. 帮别人准备的一个聚会

Describe a party you organised for another person.

You should say:

who you organised the party for

what kind of party it was

where it was held

and explain how you felt about the party



对于多数“烤鸭”来说，生日聚会是最有话可说的 party，只用“小词”就可以说得扣题、清晰、自然。

难度指数：★★☆☆☆

### Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a party I organised for a good friend of mine named Mia. Last month, I noticed her birthday was coming up. I wanted her to have a really special birthday, so I decided to organise **a surprise birthday party** for her.

I called my friends Jillian, Chris, Evan and Matt who were also Mia's friends, and asked them if they'd like to join me in **throwing a surprise birthday party** for Mia.

They were very excited to hear my ideas and promised they wouldn't tell anyone about my plan. I also **called** Mia's parents **in advance** to make sure they would be okay with my plan.

On Mia's birthday, we went to her home with a big birthday cake, colourful **balloons** and our **presents** for her. We also helped her parents **decorate** the living room. Then we hid behind doors or curtains.





About ten minutes later, we heard **footsteps** and Mia came in. We jumped out and shouted, “Surprise!” Mia was so surprised she was like, “**My goodness!** What’s going on here?” Everyone said “Happy Birthday” to her. Then we brought out the cake, lit the candles, and started singing the birthday song to her.

Mia was so excited she **was moved to tears**. She thanked everyone for the party, and she said it was the most special birthday she ever had.

I was very glad Mia liked the party I organised for her. I felt all my planning really **paid off**.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

Pat 在这个答案里所用的人名都是现在国外年轻人的常见名字

作为惊喜的生日聚会 **a surprise birthday party** (表达这个意思时, native speakers 不说 a surprising birthday party X)

为某人开派对 **throw a party for...** 提前给……打电话 **call... in advance**

气球 **balloons** 生日礼物 **birthday present**

装饰 **decorate** 藏起来 **hide** (过去时: **hide**)

窗帘 **curtains** 脚步 **footsteps**

点蜡烛 **light** (过去时: **lit**) **the candles**

天哪! **Oh my goodness!** (中国的同学们都知道 Oh my God!, 但是在真实的英美生活里语气比较含蓄的 My goodness! 更常听到, 只有感到“非常震惊”的时候 native speakers 才会说 Oh my God!)

感动地流泪 **was moved to tears** 有回报 **pay off** (过去时: **paid off**)

### 扩展词汇

过生日的男孩 / 女孩 **the birthday boy / the birthday girl**

密友 **close friends** 生日贺卡 **birthday card**



异口同声地说“生日快乐” say “Happy Birthday” in unison

唱“祝你生日快乐” sing (过去时: sang) “Happy Birthday”

许愿 make (过去时: made) a wish

吹蜡烛 blow out (过去时: blew out) the candles

彼此拥抱 hug each other

切蛋糕 cut the cake

开礼物 open the presents

唱卡拉 OK sing karaoke (过去时: sang karaoke, 请注意听音频里 karaoke 的正确发音, 很多同学会说错这个词)

非常值得回忆的经历 a memorable experience

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

准备 IELTS 口语最好的心态就是把它看成学习地道英文和了解英语文化的起点。您进入任何一所英联邦大学之后都会立刻明白 party 在当地的校园文化里扮演着何等重要的角色。这个网站也能为您提供很多 party ideas: [www. partycity. com/ category/party +ideas. do](http://www.partycity.com/category/party+ideas.do)

如果说一个聚会是“精心策划”的, 除了 It was carefully planned / carefully organised / carefully arranged. 这三个地道短语之外, 还有一个国内孩子很少用但在国外却挺常用的表达: This was a well-thought-out party.

[剑桥例句] Nothing can be more fun than going to a well-thought-out birthday party.

## 9. 婚礼

Describe a wedding you have attended.

You should say:

when it was





where it was  
who got married  
and explain what happened at the wedding.

Pat 指南



William 与 Kate (在英美生活里一般是简称他们为 Will and Kate) 当年的 royal wedding 在全世界获得了 20 亿观众的收视率, 现在都已经生“三胎”了, 而且 Harry and Meghan 的 royal wedding 又紧追“哥嫂”创下的收视纪录, 可见 wedding 永远是一个令人向往的主题。

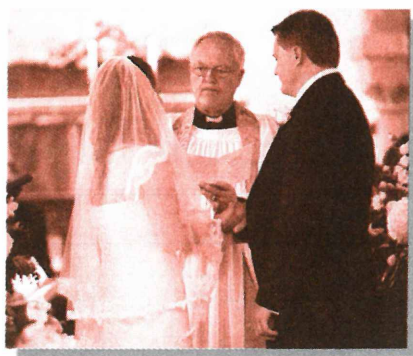
考生们回答这道考题的常见误区是把婚礼的每一步都很机械、呆板地罗列出来, 听起来更像是专业婚礼司仪 (地道英文里叫作 wedding MC) 在讲解自己的服务项目。其实考官真正想听你说的是一个扣题、自然、有整体感的描述 (description)。

难度指数: ★★☆☆☆

Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about a good friend's wedding I attended last month.

The wedding ceremony was held in a church. It began at 9 in the morning. There were around 150 people at the ceremony, including the bride and groom's family, friends and colleagues. We all dressed up for the occasion.



After the guests were seated, the Wedding March started and the bridesmaids entered. My friend, you know, the bride, entered last, in a white wedding dress. Many guests were moved to tears as the bride and groom met at the front of the room, exchanged wedding vows and kissed each other.

There were even more people at the wedding reception, which was held in a hotel. The room was well decorated, with lots of flowers and a huge wedding cake.



My friend and her husband walked around and **greeted their guests**. Everyone had a great time at the party.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

结婚仪式 **wedding ceremony / marriage ceremony** (英美的婚礼一般都是包括结婚仪式和婚宴两个部分)

婚宴 **wedding reception**

新郎新娘 **the bride and groom** (地道英文里的习惯顺序是“新娘新郎”)

同事 **colleagues / co-workers**

穿着比较正式的服装 **dress up**

就座 **were seated**

婚礼进行曲 **the Wedding March**

伴娘 **bridesmaids**

婚纱 **wedding dress / wedding gown**

热泪盈眶 **were moved to tears**

交换结婚誓言 **exchange wedding vows**

装饰得很好的 **well-decorated**

婚礼蛋糕 **wedding cake**

问候客人们 **greeted their guests**



### 扩展词汇

司仪 **MC**

开场白 **opening remarks**

伴郎 **best man**

男士晚礼服(适合非常正式的场所) **tuxedo / tux**

花童 **flower girl**

新人 **the newly-wed couple / the newly-weds**

祝福与祝贺 **best wishes and congratulations**

切蛋糕 **cut the cake**

蜜月 **honeymoon**

扔花束 **toss the bouquet** (据说拿到花束的女孩会是下一个结婚的女孩)

向新婚夫妇撒米(或者纸片) **shower the couple with rice (or confetti)**

请参考答案的思路,并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词,思考如果是您将会怎么说



## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

无论是在中国还是在英美，在婚宴上面都会有人向新婚夫妇祝酒，地道英文叫 **drink a toast to the happy couple**。

[剑桥例句] The guests drank (drink 的过去时) **a toast to the happy couple**.

### Time to Branch Out.

#### 推而广之

Describe an occasion when you had a special cake.

在英美，人们不仅在生日派对 (birthday party) 和婚宴 (wedding reception) 上吃“大蛋糕”，有时也会把小蛋糕当成饭后的甜点 (dessert)，Pat 还有一些英国朋友很喜欢在喝茶的时候配上小蛋糕。当然，除了介绍场合，为了确保扣题还应该重点谈谈蛋糕为什么特殊：也许是定制的蛋糕 (英文叫作 a **customised cake** / a **custom-made cake**)，看起来很特殊 It **looked** very special. (例如椭圆形的蛋糕 **oval cake** 或者像婚礼蛋糕那样很多个叠起来的蛋糕 **tiered/** **tiəd/** **cake**)，或者 It **tasted** very special. (例如 cake with a **crunchy nut topping** 蛋糕表面铺着一层 almond 杏仁，pecan 山核桃等口感很脆的坚果，或者吃起来感觉就像含有水分一样 It tasted very **moist**，放到嘴里就化了 **melted in my mouth**.)

Pat 还吃过一种比较特殊的含有姜粉 ginger powder 的蛋糕，味道有点辣 a bit **spicy**)，还有可能是因为蛋糕上面的装饰很特殊 (The **decorations** on the cake were very special. 例如有可以吃的彩带 **edible ribbons** that looked great and tasted awesome，或者蛋糕上面写的话很特殊 There were **words on the cake, saying...** 让你觉得很感动 I felt really **moved** by the words. 或者很受激励 I felt really **inspired** by the words.)，甚至有可能是因为这个蛋糕就是你的某一位亲人或朋友亲手烤的 (The cake was **baked** by my...)。

不论特殊的原因是什么，[www.allrecipes.com/recipes/276/desserts/cakes/](http://www.allrecipes.com/recipes/276/desserts/cakes/) 这个网站都足以满足您对于蛋糕的一切幻想，图片都很诱人，介绍也很详细 (注意：看看关键词即可，但不要全文 copy，你自己花时间组织的内容哪怕是简单一点也要比全文机械背诵的答案听起来更自然)。Enjoy the cake!



## 10. 节日

Describe a festival that is popular in your country.

You should say:

what the festival is

when it is celebrated

what people do during this festival

and explain whether you like this festival or not.



### Pat 指南



国内同学们描述 festival 的常见问题同样是机械地罗列节日的起源和相关活动，一听就是在背诵（像这样简单粗暴的答题方式，甚至即使不是在背都会让考官误以为你在背）。

只要扣题，无论说哪个节日都是可以的，但必须始终牢记：虽然 Part 2 是“独白”，examiner 也希望听你自然、真实地说英文。

难度指数：★★★★☆

### Pat 的答案

Let me talk about the Duan Wu Festival. It falls on the fifth day of the fifth month of the **lunar calendar**. It has become even more popular since it became a public holiday in China.



The festival is celebrated in honour of a famous poet in Chinese history, named Qu Yuan. His country was **defeated** in a war and even lost its capital. The poet was so sad he **drowned himself**. These days, during the festival people eat rice dumplings (or in Chinese, *zong zi*), to **pay tribute to** him. We all respect people who love their country, right?



Another popular way to celebrate the festival is dragon boat racing. It's like a number of teams **rowing** and **competing against** one another. The boats are **decorated** to look like dragons, so they're called dragon boats. To be honest, I've only watched **dragon boat races** on TV. From what I've seen on TV, they are very **fun and exciting** events.

I like the Duan Wu Festival because it celebrates **loyalty** and **the circle of life**. And *zong zi*, the main food we eat during the festival, tastes really good...

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

起源	origin	很爱国的	patriotic
糯米	sticky rice / glutinous rice		
(粽子、元宵或饺子里的) “馅儿”	stuffing / filling		
豆沙	bean paste		
用竹叶包起来的	wrapped in bamboo leaves		
节日的庆祝活动 (名词)	festivities	很喜庆的 (形容词)	festive
中秋节	the Mid-Autumn Festival	圆月, 满月	full moon
月饼	mooncakes	元宵节	the Lantern Festival
驱难避邪	ward off evil spirits	灯展	display of lanterns
“年三十儿”	the Lunar New Year's Eve		
压岁钱	lucky money	红包	red envelope
收到礼物	receive gifts	饺子	dumplings
放鞭炮	set off firecrackers	传统服装	traditional costumes
对联	couplet	狮子舞	lion dance
舞龙	dragon dance		
节日里最精彩的部分	the highlight of the festival		



标志着 mark

象征着 represent / symbolise

被和……联系在一起 is associated with...

生机, 生命的活力 (名词) vitality

很有活力的 (形容词) lively / energetic

午夜零点倒计时 count down to midnight

许愿 make a wish

烟火表演 fireworks display

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

Pat 自己长期生活在国外, 但每年都可以真实地感受到春节对英语国家文化的影响力确实越来越大。您不妨看看在伦敦是怎样庆祝中国新年的 (点击页面上的 “About” 就能看到伦敦在中国新年的大量庆祝活动了): [www.visitlondon.com/things-to-do/event/4733685-chinese-new-year-in-london](http://www.visitlondon.com/things-to-do/event/4733685-chinese-new-year-in-london)

IELTS 口试有时还会考 **Describe a historical event.** (一个历史事件) 这个话题。如果您想介绍中国历史, [en.wikipedia.org](http://en.wikipedia.org) 覆盖了大多数重要的中国历史事件, 例如您可以用右上角的 search 键很快找出对于 the Battle of Red Cliffs (赤壁之战), Richard Nixon's visit to China (尼克松访华) 等历史事件的详细介绍。[www.historyworld.net/wrldhis/PlainTextHistories.asp](http://www.historyworld.net/wrldhis/PlainTextHistories.asp) 则更系统地介绍了中国历史, 页面左侧还提供了不同的朝代 (dynasties) 让你选择。而 [www.tostepharmd.net/hissoc/top100events.html](http://www.tostepharmd.net/hissoc/top100events.html) 则提供了 Life 杂志对于最近一千年里人类的 100 个重要历史事件的深入描述。当然, 不同的人看待历史的眼光也可能是不同的, 所以看这些介绍的时候也请您充分发挥自己的辩证思维能力 (critical thinking skills), 不必盲从 (Don't accept their views blindly.)

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

每个传统节日的背后都有着丰富的故事 (There're many interesting **tales** behind every traditional festival. )。那么怎样用地道英文表示一个节日是我们的 “文化遗产” 的重要部分呢? native speakers 会说 It's an important part of our **cultural heritage**.

[剑桥例句] Folk music is an important part of our **cultural heritage**.



## 11. 第一次品尝某种食品的经历

Describe an occasion when you tried a kind of food for the first time.

You should say:

when that was

where that was

what you tried

and explain how you felt about the experience.



难度指数: ★★★★★☆

### Pat 的答案

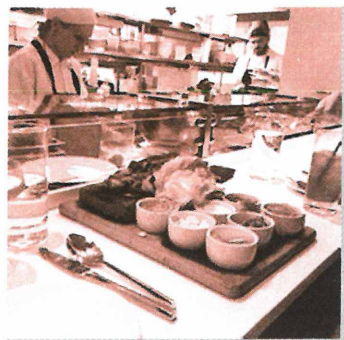
Last Saturday was one of my best friends' birthday, so we went to a **buffet restaurant** to celebrate.

There was a large **sushi** area in the restaurant. I'd never had sushi before, so my friend **encouraged me to try it**. That made me **feel nervous** because I'd heard sushi had **raw fish** in it but I didn't like food that's not **cooked**. I told my friend about my **concern** and she **recommended** "California rolls". She said California rolls didn't have any raw fish in them — just **cucumber**, **crab sticks**, **avocado** and **rice**.

I picked up a California roll and put it on my **plate**, still feeling a bit nervous. But it was my friend's birthday and I wanted to make her happy. So I **took a deep breath** and **took a small bite of** the sushi. It tasted very **bland**. I had to **dip** the sushi in **soy sauce** to add some **flavour** to it.

My friend asked me if I liked it. I didn't want to disappoint her so I told her it was "really good".

Honestly, I didn't really like the sushi. But it was still **a fun and exciting experience** for me because I tried something I had never eaten before — almost like **an adventure**.





# 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

## ► Tool Box

自助餐馆 buffet restaurant

寿司 sushi

鼓励 encourage

紧张的 nervous

生鱼 raw fish (生鱼片叫 sashimi)

熟的 cooked

担忧, 顾虑 concern

推荐 recommend

黄瓜 cucumber

蟹肉条 crab stick

牛油果 avocado

米 rice

盘子 plate

深呼吸 take a deep breath

咬了一小口 take a small bite of...

味道很淡的 bland

蘸 dip

酱油 soy sauce (sauce 是指调味酱, 英美人吃饭可谓是“无调味酱不成饭”, 对原料本身的味道反而不是“辣么”地在意)

滋味 flavor

## 扩展词汇

做菜的原料 ingredients

意大利面条 spaghetti

比萨饼 pizza

英国的炸鱼薯条 fish and chips

海鲜饭 paella

南瓜派 pumpkin pie

法式长面包, 法棒 baguette

奶酪汉堡 cheeseburger

韩国泡菜 kimchi

墨西哥卷饼 taco

泰式炒河粉 Pad Thai

主菜 main dish

主菜之前的开胃小吃 appetiser

饭后甜点 dessert

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

作为一个资深“吃货”(foodie), Pat 必须向您推荐这个网站: [recipes.wikia.com](http://recipes.wikia.com), 只要从开胃菜、主菜和饭后甜点里选出您想找的类型, 点进去就是多国美食大全, 不仅英文简单易懂, 而且做菜的步骤说明(recipe)也方便可行。有了它, 就再也不必担心因为实现留学梦而让自己的胃“受委屈”了



## 12. 迟到的经历

Describe an occasion when you were late.

You should say:

what occasion you were late for

when it happened

why you were late

and explain how you felt about being late.



难度指数：★★★★☆☆

### Pat 的答案

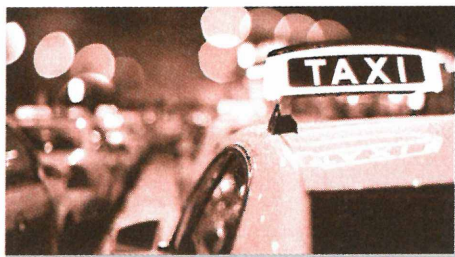
I'd like to tell you about a **job interview** I was late for.

Last Tuesday, I got an email from a company, inviting me for a job interview. I applied for a job at that company last month and really hoped I could get it. At first, I felt very excited. But then I got nervous. I slept little that night. And the next morning I **woke up late**, at around 8:30.

They'd asked me to arrive by 9 am. So I ran out of my apartment, **hailed a taxi** and told the driver to drive as fast as possible. But there was a serious traffic jam, and we **got stuck in traffic**. The taxi moved so slowly I got mad. I **yelled at** the driver to drive faster, but he told me there was really nothing he could do about it.

I had no choice but to call the hiring manager at the company. I told him I would probably be late for the interview and I was really sorry about that. To my surprise, that gentleman **remained very nice and calm** and told me not to worry about it. They would just wait for me. He even asked me to tell the taxi driver to **drive safely**.

Finally I got there and had the interview. It went very well. I answered all of their questions about myself and my past experience honestly and clearly. They were





impressed with my answers and... I got the job!

I was very excited and felt lucky because I was almost half an hour late for the interview. But looking back, I guess I should have said sorry to the taxi driver. I really shouldn't have yelled at him.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

工作面试 job interview

醒来晚了 woke up late

叫出租车, 拦出租车 hailed a taxi

被“堵”在路上 got stuck in traffic

向某人大声叫嚷 yelled at someone

平静的 calm

安全驾驶 drive safely

### 扩展词汇

约定的时间 appointment

通常都很守时 usually punctual

完全忘记了约定 totally forgot the appointment

匆忙地 in a hurry

雨下得很大 It was raining hard.

路面湿滑 The road was wet and slippery.

错过了公车 I missed the bus.

公车晚点半个小时 The bus was half an hour behind schedule.

告诉我放松并且保持镇定 told me to relax and stay calm

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说

## Pat 的海外生活英语实录

忘记上闹钟或者闹钟没响是很多人约会迟到的原因, “忘记上闹钟”的英文是 I forgot to **set the alarm** (clock). 而“闹钟由于某种原因没有响”的英文则是 Somehow the alarm (clock) **didn't go off**.



### 13. 一部好的法律

Describe a good law in your country.

You should say:

what law it is

how you first heard about it

why it is good

and explain who can benefit from this law.



#### Pat 指南



这年头可真不能是法盲，连 IELTS 都要求描述法律……

这个卡片话题并不是描述事件，但是因为在介绍 “how you first heard about it” 的时候会用到动词的过去时态，所以我们把它放在这里来看一看怎样用清晰、扣题、自然的英文描述一部好的法律。

难度指数：★★★★☆

#### Pat 的答案

I'm going to talk about the Traffic Safety Law in China. I first heard about this law from a friend. Then I learned more about it at the driving school I attended.

This law has eight main parts, including **rules** about driving, **parking** and **road signs**. It was passed in 2003 and **took effect** in 2004.



It's a good law because the rules are very clear and **detailed**, so they can be easily understood by drivers. For example, the **penalty** for **drink-driving** is clearly **set out in the law**. The **aim** of the penalty is to show drivers that drink-driving is a crime and it **won't be tolerated**. This definitely helps to reduce drink-driving.

This law is good also because lawmakers have been making changes to it to



**keep the law up to date**. The number of drivers in China has been increasing rapidly. And the number of car **accidents** has also been rising. We really need an effective and up-to-date traffic law to **improve road safety**.

This law helps to make our roads safer. I think everyone — drivers, **cyclists** and **pedestrians** — who **obey this law** can benefit from it.

## 轮到你了

It's Your Turn.

### ► Tool Box

规定 <b>rules</b>	停车 <b>parking</b>
道路标识 <b>road signs</b>	正式实施 <b>take effect</b>
详细的 <b>detailed</b>	处罚 <b>penalty</b>
醉驾 <b>drink-driving</b> (英式) / <b>drunk-driving</b> (美式)	
在法律里得到明文规定 <b>is clearly set out in the law</b>	
目标 <b>aim</b>	不会被容忍, 零容忍 <b>won't be tolerated</b>
保持法律有很好的时效性 <b>keep the law up to date</b>	
事故 <b>accident</b>	改善道路安全 <b>improve road safety</b>
骑自行车的人 <b>cyclist</b>	行人 <b>pedestrian</b>
遵守法律 <b>obey the law</b>	

### 扩展词汇

驾驶时使用手机 **use a mobile phone while driving**

[BBC 例句] Drivers who **use a mobile phone while driving** will face tougher penalties.

劳动法 <b>labour law</b>	公司法 <b>company law / corporate law</b>
商业法 <b>commercial law</b>	版权法 <b>copyright law</b>
婚姻法 <b>marriage law</b>	专利法 <b>patent law</b>

请参考答案的思路, 并适当借鉴这个词汇表里的单词, 思考如果是您将会怎么说



☆ 双语感悟之 人生里一个积极的变化

Describe a positive change in your life.

You should say:

what this change was

when this change happened

why it was positive

and explain how this change has influenced your life.

想说好 Part 2，首先必须扣题。

什么样的 change 算是 a positive change?

a positive change 可以是生活小事。比如自己以前不关心家长，甚至经常和家长吵架 (often argued with my parents)，有一次父亲或者母亲生病了才明白应该照顾父母，自己也变得更关心、体贴别人了 (became a more **caring and understanding** person)。

又比如说自己以前在足球队或者篮球队里不愿意和队友合作 (was not **a good team player**)，总想成为注意力的焦点 (always wanted to be **the center of attention**)，经常拒绝传球给队友 (often refused to **pass the ball** to my teammates)，而且也不关心队友的感受 (didn't **care about** my teammates' feelings)。球队遭到一次惨败之后 (after our team **suffered a heavy defeat**)，自己才明白团队合作的重要性 (the importance of **teamwork**)，学会了尊重自己的队友 (learned to **respect** my teammates)，于是向队友们道歉 (**apologised to** my teammates)，并且开始和队友们密切地合作 (started to **work closely with** my teammates)。球队获得了很大进步 (Our team **improved** a lot.)，自己与队友们也成了好朋友 (I became good friends with my teammates.)，直到现在还保持联系 (I still **keep in touch with** most of them.) 等等。

a positive change 同样也可以是对你的生活方式有深刻影响的大事。比如自己以前过度依赖家长 (**relied too much on** my parents)，而且从来都不帮家长做饭或者打扫房间 (never **helped my parents with** cooking or cleaning)，但后来离开家去别的城市上大学，让你变得更加独立而且更有责任感了 (more **independent and responsible**)。



再比如你以前的生活方式很不健康 (I used to **have an unhealthy lifestyle**.), 例如每天花很多时间打网络游戏 (spent many hours playing **online games**), 爱吃垃圾食品 (ate lots of **junk food**, ate 是 eat 的过去时), 还熬夜看电视 (**stayed up late** watching TV) 等等。但一个电视节目、一本书或者一篇报纸上的文章 (a newspaper article) 帮助你真正明白了不健康生活方式的危害 (helped me better understand the **damage caused by** an unhealthy lifestyle)。你决定改变自己的不健康生活方式 (decided to **change my unhealthy lifestyle**), 例如减少玩网络游戏的时间 (**reduced the time** I spent playing online games), 远离垃圾食品 (**stayed away from** junk food), 多吃蔬菜水果 (ate lots of **fruit and vegetables**), 按时作息 (kept a **regular sleep schedule**), 开始经常锻炼身体 (started to **exercise regularly**) 等等。现在自己每天都感觉很有活力 (**feel energetic** every day), 而且注意力也更集中了 (can **concentrate better**) ……



# Day



## Part 3:

### 怎样自然地

### 把答案说长

### Pat's Guide

### To The IELTS Speaking Test

---

Only through discussion

Can we achieve consensus



★ [www.ted.com/talks](http://www.ted.com/talks) ★

考官在 Part 3 里提出的问题一般都比较“宏大”,而且要求你说出一些细节(details),而不再只是像 Part 1 那样轻松愉快的闲谈。为了从心态上做好准备,您可以在考前登录这个 TED 网站,它的话题已经覆盖了 Part 3 的全部常见话题,而且 TED talks 的用词风格本身就很接近 Part 3 的用词风格,认真听吧



## Part 3 高分答案的结构

口语 Part 3 是**深入讨论** (detailed discussion), 考官会提出 6 ~ 8 个与你之前拿到的卡片话题相关的问题。但与 Part 1 的提问不同的是: 考官在 Part 3 的提问很少涉及你个人的“私生活”, 而是更关注社区、城市、社会、国家甚至国际层面的问题, 并且还要求你能够说出一些**细节** (details)。所以, 能否回答好 Part 3 往往是区分普通的口试表现 (6 ~ 6.5 分) 和优秀的口试表现 (7 分或以上) 的重要分水岭。

好消息是: Part 3 虽然是深入讨论, 但它毕竟还是口语考试, 而不是书面考试。你只要能确实针对考官的问题提出自己的看法, 并适当支持自己的看法就已经很好了。而且 British Council 给出的 Part 3 官方高分答案仍然有清晰的逻辑规律, 并非“无厘头”, 只要有勇气、有决心, Part 3 完全可以顺利过关。

### || British Council 对考生 Part 3 答案结构的建议 ||

- 01 明确回答考官提出的问题** (Answer the question directly.), 让考官放心你不会跑题;
- 02 给出你这样说的理由** (reason);
- 03 支持**你给出的理由, 有理有据的谈话才能叫作讨论 (discussion)。口语对话里最常见的支持方式就是**举例**。但如果实在想不出任何恰当的例子, 或者对某个理由确实“无感”, 那么也不要紧张, 就用简单的方式再**解释**或**转述**一下自己的理由也同样能让你的理由听起来更有说服力;



- 04** 如果你发现自己说“high”了，想到的理由居然还不止一个，那么可以再继续说出**其它的理由**以及相应的支持。但请注意：这一步不是必须的（It is optional.）。如果并没有想到更多的理由，那么在答案里只说一个理由并且给出支持就已经很好了。口试里的最大敌人其实是“刻意为之”；
- 05** 在 Part 3，考官会连续发问，一般会问 6~8 个问题。对于其中的 2~3 个你特别“有感觉”的问题，还可以选择用“On the other hand, ...”，“But it's also true ...”，“Without ..., ...would...”，“If we don't..., ...will...”等方式再简要地谈一谈**问题的另一面**（You may mention an opposite idea.）。但是请注意：这一步也不是必须的，你可以选择在 2~3 个问题的答案里给出，但是不要勉强。

## 怎样才能说得流畅而不机械？

在 Part 3 答案里的句子之间，可以用 **because**, **For example**, **such as**, **like** (比如……)，**so**, **if**, **and**, **also** 等 native speakers 在日常对话里真正使用的逻辑关系词来形成逻辑连接（如果不确定用法，请立刻复习 Day 4），不要用怪异、不自然的连接词破坏你的答案的连贯性。



## British Council 提供的高分答案实例分析

口语 Part 3 常被中国同学们戏称为“趴睡”，除了因为中文的“趴睡”和英文的 Part 3 发音接近之外，还因为很多同学感觉 Part 3 的挑战太大，所以干脆选择了“就地卧倒”。其实只要真正熟悉了上一页的高分答案结构，在 Part 3 “说长答案”（extend your answer）并不是一件很困难的事情。

我们一起来看 British Council 官方提供的 Part 3 高分答案实例：



○ 比较两种选择 ○

**Do you think it's better to rent or to buy a place to live in?**

I think it's better to buy a place to live in (第1步: 明确回答考官提出的问题, 让考官放心) because it **gives us more freedom** (第2步: 给出自己这样回答的理由). For example, we can **decorate** our living room as we wish (第3步: 举例子支持自己的理由). And we don't need to **pay rent** if we own the place (第4步: 给出自己的其它理由). On the other hand, it's true that these days many young people **can't afford to** buy their own place, so they have to rent (第5步: 自然地提及了“另一面”).

需要注意的是: 以上这个高分实例在 British Council 给出的 Part 3 官方实例里属于比较少有的“五脏俱全”的答案, 而另一些高分答案就没有这么完整了 (但是所有的官方实例都含有一些“细节” details)。

这是 British Council 给出的结构更精炼的一个 Part 3 高分实例:

○ 列举并说明原因 ○

**What qualities make a person admirable? Why?**

I think **kindness and honesty** are important qualities **that** most people admire (明确回答考官的问题) because sometimes it's hard to **put other people first**, and it's not always easy to **tell the truth** (给出自己这样回答的理由). People who are prepared to do these things are very special and others tend to admire them (这名高分考生回答这道问题时明显没有想到可以恰当支持自己理由的实例, 所以他/她并没有强迫自己“举栗子”, 而选择了只是简单地解释自己的理由, 同样也形成了有效的论述)



下面这个来自 British Council 的 Part 3 高分实例的结构复杂度则介于前面两个实例之间：

比较男女差距

**Do you think men and women respect different qualities?**

Yes, I think **men** admire competence while **women** prefer personal qualities (明确回答考官的问题) because they had different traditional roles (给出自己这样认为的理由). In the past, women **looked after the children** and men worked to **earn money**, so they tended to respect different qualities (解释、支持自己的理由, 虽然并不算很“细”, 但还是让答案听起来有了一些细节感). But I also think this is changing and men and women are becoming **more similar** in their attitudes (这名考生确实想到了“另一面”, 所以就没跟考官客气, 但这一步不是必须有的 It's optional. ).



**Test Tip**

作为一种英语语言能力测试, IELTS 口试最可贵之处就是它的目的是考查**真实的交流技能**, 而不是考查“背诵技能”。主办方明确指出: Part 3 答案结构并不是僵化的、一成不变的 (Examiners are only interested in **your ability to communicate**. That is all they are judging and assessing. ). 我们从上面的官方高分实例可以清楚地看出: 如果在支持自己的理由时并没有想到恰当的例子, 那么就不必勉强举例。如果确实没想到“另一面”的内容, 那么也不用“硬着头皮”去谈另一面。只要认真地回答考官提出的问题, 不跑题, 而且也能够适当地给出理由, 确实有“讨论” (discussion) 的感觉、而不是“逃论” (escape from the discussion) 的感觉, 那么就是一个有效的 Part 3 答案 (is a well-structured Part 3 answer)。



## 熟悉高分答案的结构

British Council 官方把 Part 3 的考题类型分成 5 种：

- ✳ 你的意见是什么 (give opinions)
- ✳ 列举 (list items)
- ✳ 分析原因 (give reasons)
- ✳ 比较 (compare)
- ✳ 展望未来 (discuss future changes)

每种题型的官方高分答案实例我们都要分析一下：

先请您登录本书的音频下载网站，打开 Day 9 的音频文件。

听到每一个问题后，建议您：(1) 先思考你自己会如何回答这个问题，(2) 然后再对比官方高分答案实例是如何安排结构的。(注意：British Council 提供的高分实例均为答案样例 sample answers，但不是唯一的答案 just one example out of many possible approaches)。

**Do you agree that travel can contribute  
to the economy of a country?**

考题类型：你的意见

Yes, I agree (明确回答考官的问题) because travellers contribute a lot to **the service industry** in the country they travel to (给出自己这样回答的理由). For example, travellers **spend money on** hotels, food and entertainment (“栗子”支持自己的理由). Many travellers also **buy souvenirs** from local shops (想到了更多恰当的“栗子”时也不要犹豫，举例的关键是两个字：扣题).



### Do you think local businesses are important to a community?

考题类型：你的意见

Yes, I think they're very important (明确回答考官的问题) because they **bring people together** and help people **build a strong sense of community** (给出自己这样回答的理由). For example, many people like to **meet their friends** at local cafés or restaurants (举例支持自己的理由).

### Do you agree that schools should teach children how to manage money?

考题类型：你的意见

Yes, I agree because teaching children how to manage money can help them develop their **financial skills**. For example, they can learn how to **make a budget**. They will also learn how to **manage their living expenses**.

### Do you think it's impolite to use mobile phones in public places?

考题类型：你的意见

I think that depends on the place (明确回答考官的问题是指考生必须正面地、有效地回应考官提出的问题，不能逃避问题，但并不是永远只能用 Yes 或者 No 答题，British Council 允许考生分情况来深入地讨论问题). It's impolite to use mobile phones in public places like cinemas, libraries and classrooms. Those places **are supposed to be** quiet. On the other hand, I think it's okay to use mobile phones in other public places, such as shopping centers and fitness centers, as long as we don't talk too loudly.



## What kinds of jobs have the highest salaries in your country? Why?

考题类型：列举并说明原因

The CEOs and managers of large companies get the highest salaries in my country (明确回答考官的问题). They work hard and help their companies **achieve success** (给出自己这样回答的理由). They **are rewarded for** their efforts with the highest salaries, which is fair (举例并不是支持的唯一方法, 简要解释自己的理由也是很好的支持).

## Why do some people like doing new things?

考题类型：原因是什么

That's because doing new things is more **fun and exciting** than doing the same old things all the time. For example, I remember I was very excited when I started driving last summer (British Council 明确规定: If it is relevant, you can share some of your personal experience too. 如果扣题, 你可以选择用你的个人生活实例来举例). Doing new things is also a good way to **gain new knowledge**, such as knowledge about a new place or a new tool.

## Why do many people like to collect things?

考题类型：原因是什么

I suppose there are different reasons for different people. Some people think of collecting things as **an investment**. For example, many art collectors believe the **artworks** they have collected will **go up in value**. Others collect things



because they have too much **spare time** on their hands. They tend to collect things **for fun**. There're also people who collect things because they want to remember **past experiences**.

### What are the advantages and disadvantages of using solar energy?

考题类型：分析利弊

I think the main advantage is it's renewable. It will be available as long as the sun shines. Another advantage is solar energy is clean. It doesn't cause damage to the environment. On the other hand, using solar energy is more expensive than using fossil fuels such as oil and gas, so we need new technology to make it cheaper.

### What are the advantages of online shopping?

考题类型：分析利弊

The biggest advantage of online shopping is **convenience**. We don't need to **go from shop to shop** to find what we need. For example, last night it took me about 5 minutes to **find and order** a perfect birthday cake online for my roommate. Another advantage of online shopping is the **lower cost**. Most of the things I need are cheaper online than in shops, and I can **save money on transport** too.

在回答分析利弊的考题时，如果您不想总是重复 advantage，也可以和 **benefit** 交替使用；如果您不想总是重复 disadvantage，则可以和 **drawback** 交替使用，benefit 和 drawback 两个词也同样是地道的英文



### What are the benefits of parents reading books to their children?

考题类型：分析利弊

I think the main benefit is increasing their children's vocabulary. For example, reading books about space to their children can help their children learn new words such as planet, astronaut and satellite. Another benefit is improving communication between parents and their children, which can make them feel closer to each other. It's also a good way to increase children's concentration.

### What disadvantages are there in a society where the gap between rich and poor is very large?

考题类型：分析利弊

There're **a variety of** disadvantages. For example, schools in **poor communities** are bad, and large numbers of students **drop out of school** at young ages. Many of them become criminals and end up in prison. There are also high rates of health problems because **low-income families** can't **afford** good health care.

### Who can give young people better advice, parents or friends?

考题类型：比较长辈和年轻人

I think parents can offer better advice because they have **more life experience**. They know how to **compare different plans** and how to **avoid common mistakes**. Friends can offer a lot of support, but their advice is usually **not as helpful as** advice from parents.



### Which are more important, art lessons or academic lessons?

考题类型：比较两类事物

I think academic lessons are more important because they teach **language skills**, **maths skills** and **science skills**. These skills can **prepare students for employment**. It's true that art lessons are **fun and interesting**, but drawing and painting skills won't help students find jobs when they **enter the job market**.

### Have relationships between parents and children changed in recent years?

考题类型：比较现在和过去

They're not as close as they **used to** be. Parents and their children **used to** have dinner together and **do housework** together. But now most parents **have busy careers**, so they **spend less time with** their children. Even when they spend time with their children, the time is often spent silently **surfing the Internet** or **playing video games**.

### Will working from home become more common in the future?

考题类型：展望未来

Yes, I think more people will work from home in the future (明确问答考官的问题) because the Internet will be **faster** and there will be **better apps** to help employees work from home (给出自己这样认为的理由). Working from home will be **easier** and **more efficient** in the future (简要地解释自己的理由).



**As home viewing technology improves,  
do you think cinemas will disappear in the future?**

考题类型：展望未来

No, I don't think so. Watching a film, such as an **action film** or a **sci-fi film**, on a huge cinema screen will always feel **more special** than on a small screen at home. And cinema technology, like IMAX, is also improving very fast. It'll help cinemas continue to **attract viewers** in the future.

当您对 British Council 的官方高分答案结构真正熟练了之后，就可以向这个结构里“添砖加瓦”了。您可以在本书附赠的《IELTS 口语高频词汇 & 短语速查手册》**第一章**里看到帮助你在 Part 3 快速想出 ideas 的地道英文。







# Day

# 10



## 口语高分考生的共同点

*What It Takes to  
Get a Good Score.*

Pat's Guide

To The IELTS Speaking Test

---

The play is done; the curtain drops

The actor stops

And looks around to say farewell



最

后一天了。江淹的《别赋》说：“黯然消魂者，唯别而已矣。”英文则说“Every ending can be a new beginning.” 中西方文化的差异，确实不是一两句话能够说清的。

Pat 写这本书的动力之一就是希望把自己多年来在英语国家学习、生活每天都听到、看到的真实英文传递给中国同学们，帮助同学们摆脱用“中式英语”说英文话题的苦恼。您可以放心地把从本书学到的英文用在 IELTS 口试以及出国之后的留学生活里，充分享受和 native speakers “无障碍交流”的乐趣 (the pleasure of easy and effective communication)。

Pat 完成本书的另一个心愿是帮助中国同学们拨开种种迷雾，看清 IELTS 口语高分的本质要求：用英语去和你的考官进行一次**真正的交流**。正如很多口语考官们明确指出的，“It's not what you say. It's how you say it.” ① 扣题，② 清晰，③ 自然的答案才是坐在你对面的 examiner 真心期待的。

如果您仍然半信半疑，希望 Cambridge University Press 出版的 *The Official Cambridge Guide to IELTS* 提供的这个高分实例能最终说服您：

Describe a person who has been an important influence in your life.

You should say:

how long you have known this person

why you chose this person

how this person has influenced your life

and explain how you feel about this person.



由 Cambridge English Language Assessment 提供的高分答案实例：

I've decided to talk about my grandmother. I've known her for all my life. She's an amazing person.

I chose her because when I was young, she **looked after** me when my parents were busy at work. So I have a lot of good memories of her when I was growing up.

She has influenced my life by being such a **calm** person. She also **taught me how to read and write**. And I think it's because of her that I work so hard now. She also taught me a lot about my culture. For example, she taught me how to **cook some traditional dishes**.

When I think of my grandmother, I feel very happy. I love her very much and I feel a lot of **respect** for her. But sometimes I also feel worried about her because she is quite old now and still **lives alone**.

这样的答案扣题、清晰，而且语言自然流畅，考官可以充分理解考生要表达的信息，形成了真正的交流，得高分实至名归（It does deserve a high score.）。

甚至即使遇到了非常“虐心”（excruciatingly hard）的题，考官也希望你能说清晰、自然的英文，而不是给他 / 她同样“虐心”的答案：

Describe a concert hall.

You should say:

where it is

what it is like

why you went there

and explain whether you like it or not.



I'm going to tell you about a concert hall in my city. It's called the Centennial Center.

It's not quite in the city center, but is only a short walk away.

The building is old, but still **in good condition**. The main hall is very big. There're probably more than 800 seats in it. The seats are **comfortable**, and it's easy to see the **stage** from most of the seats.

The hall has a **high ceiling** and a wood floor. The **sound quality** is great from almost everywhere in the hall. I've seen many concerts at this hall, from classical to jazz. I've also seen some **drama performances** there.

I like this concert hall because it's a great place for music lovers. The concerts are always impressive. The employees there are **friendly and helpful**. And ticket prices are quite **reasonable**.

扣题、清晰、自然，并且适当用地道的词汇和短语来点缀（但绝不是“充斥”）自己的答案，这就是 IELTS 口试高分考生的真正共同点，因为这样的答案向考官证明的是考生的英语沟通技能（English communication skills），而不是向考官展示自己的“机械记忆技能”（rote memorisation skills，俗称“狂背技能”）。

“用词难到让考官惊叹”的答案在 IELTS 口语备考路上只是缘木求鱼（a misguided effort）。而当你真正明白坐在你对面的那位职业是雅思考官的 native speaker 到底在期待什么，你已经成功了一半（You're halfway there.）。



本书和它的姐妹篇《十天突破雅思写作》帮助很多中国考生朋友们实现了自己的梦想。这是“十天系列”的读者陈佳沛同学（口语 8.5 分）和朱梦平同学（口语 7 分）的成绩单。虽然这两位同学的基础和分数不同，但却有明显的共同点：① 口语成绩都超过了这两位同学自己的“传统强项”——阅读成绩或者听力成绩；② 他们/她们都非常重视和考官的真实交流（effective communication）。

其实不止是这两位同学，重视与考官的交流是 Pat 认识的每一位中国口语高分考生的共同点——because the IELTS speaking test is a test designed to assess English communication skills.

如果您在 IELTS 口语备考路上遇到任何问题，或者您也愿意和朋友们分享您自己在“屠鸭”路上的点点滴滴，欢迎致信：[ielts guru@sina.com](mailto:ielts guru@sina.com)。Pat 每天都收到来自世界各地很多朋友的邮件，但只要有时间一定会尽量回复您的——simply because I'd really like to know what my Chinese readers think. ☺

### 陈佳沛同学的心得

我目前就读于悉尼大学，Pat 的书籍让我的口语和写作获得了很大的进步。以下是我的一些备考心得：

首先，从心态上说，一定要勤奋，不能一边给自己“我已经够努力了”的幻觉，同时却浪费很多时间在玩手机或者其它对考试无用的事情上面，给自己拖延的借口。

关于写作和口语的语言点、易错点，Pat 的书里已经总结得很详细了，我就不再重复了。例如，我和考官说到天气时用出了一个很地道的词 drizzle，就是 Pat 的口语书里面讲的（Big thanks, Pat!）。这里想跟没有考过雅思的朋友们强调一下的就是：你的考官也是真实的人，不是机器（Your speaking examiner is a real

**IELTS<sup>®</sup>**  
Test Report Form

ACADEMIC

NOTE: Examiner is undergraduate and post graduate courses should be based on the ACADEMIC Reading and Writing Modules.  
GENERAL: This module is designed to test the full range of language skills required for academic purposes.  
It is recommended that the candidate's language ability as indicated in the Test Report Form be reassessed after two years from the date of the test.

Centre Number: AU106 Date: 23/JAN/2016 Candidate Number: 010134

**Candidate Details**

Family Name: CHEN  
First Name: JIAPEI  
Candidate ID: E04039072

Date of Birth: 16/12/1993 Sex (M/F): M Scheme Code: Private Candidate

Country or Region of Origin:  
Country of Nationality: CHINA (PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF)  
First Language: CHINESE

**Test Results**

Listening	Reading	Writing	Speaking	Overall Band Score	CEFR Level
8.5	7.0	7.5	8.5	8.0	C1

Administrator Comments:

Centre stamp: MACQUARIE UNIVERSITY  
Validation stamp: IELTS

Administrator's Signature: [Signature]  
Date: 03/02/2016  
Test Report Form Number: 15ALN0134CHE105A

BRITISH COUNCIL IDP CAMBRIDGE ENGLISH Language Assessment Part of the University of Cambridge

The validity of this IELTS Test Report Form can be verified online by recognising organisations at <http://ielts.ucas.org.uk>






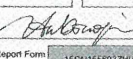



person, not a machine. ), 所以你和考官两个人之间的交流很关键。Treat your speaking examiner as a friend. 口试要得到高分就一定不能怕和考官分享你的真实想法和感受。

还有我想说一点的是语法的重要性。我自己来澳洲读本科之前都是在国内普通高中上学的, 也见过有不少同学认为不应该花时间在毫无用处的语法上面, 但我却不这么认为。比如在口语方面, 语法并不需要说得很难, 但是时态、单复数等容易错的语法点都会直接决定考官对你的说话内容的理解难易程度。有小错误也许是难免的 (我自己至少在 Part 3 里也出现了少量的语法错误), 但如果错误太多, 就会让考官觉得理解你所说的内容很困难了。

对于口试, 我自己的切身感受就是勤奋很重要, 但勤奋在点子上也很重要。Work hard and work smart!

## 朱梦平同学的心得

首战听力没考好, 但总分和小分都够了就不打算再考了。关于口语我个人最重要的体会就是不要把它当成一个决定终生命运的考试, 而是把它看成和一个外国朋友交谈的机会, 认真真地说出你的看法, 这样反而能够发挥出最佳状态。当然充分的准备是必不可少的, 我的做法就是认真看 Pat 书里的语言, 同时让自己的表达变得更地道更自然。很多同学关心的语速, 我的体会是让语速变得流利是逐步实现、水到渠成的, 如果从一开始就追求语速流利, 反而会很紧张, 而且说出来其实还是磕磕绊绊的。口试时一定要保持自信和冷静! 当然我自己未来学习的路还很长, 我会继续加油的! 谢谢 Pat!

<b>IELTS</b>	
Test Report Form	
ACADEMIC	
<small>NOTE: Admissions to undergraduate and post graduate courses should be based on the ACADEMIC Reading and Writing Modules. GENERAL TRAINING Reading and Writing Modules are not designed to test the full range of language skills required for academic purposes. It is recommended that the candidate's language skills as indicated in this Test Report Form be rechecked after one year from the date of the test.</small>	
Centre Number	CH004
Date	27/FEB/2016
Candidate Number	155693
<b>Candidate Details</b>	
Family Name	ZHU
First Name	MENGPING
Candidate ID	340223199504028423
Date of Birth	02/04/1995
Sex (M/F)	F
Scheme Code	Private Candidate
Country or Region of Origin	CHINA (PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF)
Country of Nationality	
First Language	CHINESE
<b>Test Results</b>	
Listening	6.5
Reading	6.0
Writing	6.5
Speaking	7.0
Overall Band Score	7.0
CEFR Level	C1
<b>Administrator Comments</b>	
	
	
	
Administrator's Signature: 	
Date	08/03/2016
Test Report Form Number	15CH155693ZHU0004A
	
	
	
<small>The validity of this IELTS Test Report Form can be verified online by recognising organisations at <a href="http://elts.ucas.org.uk">http://elts.ucas.org.uk</a></small>	